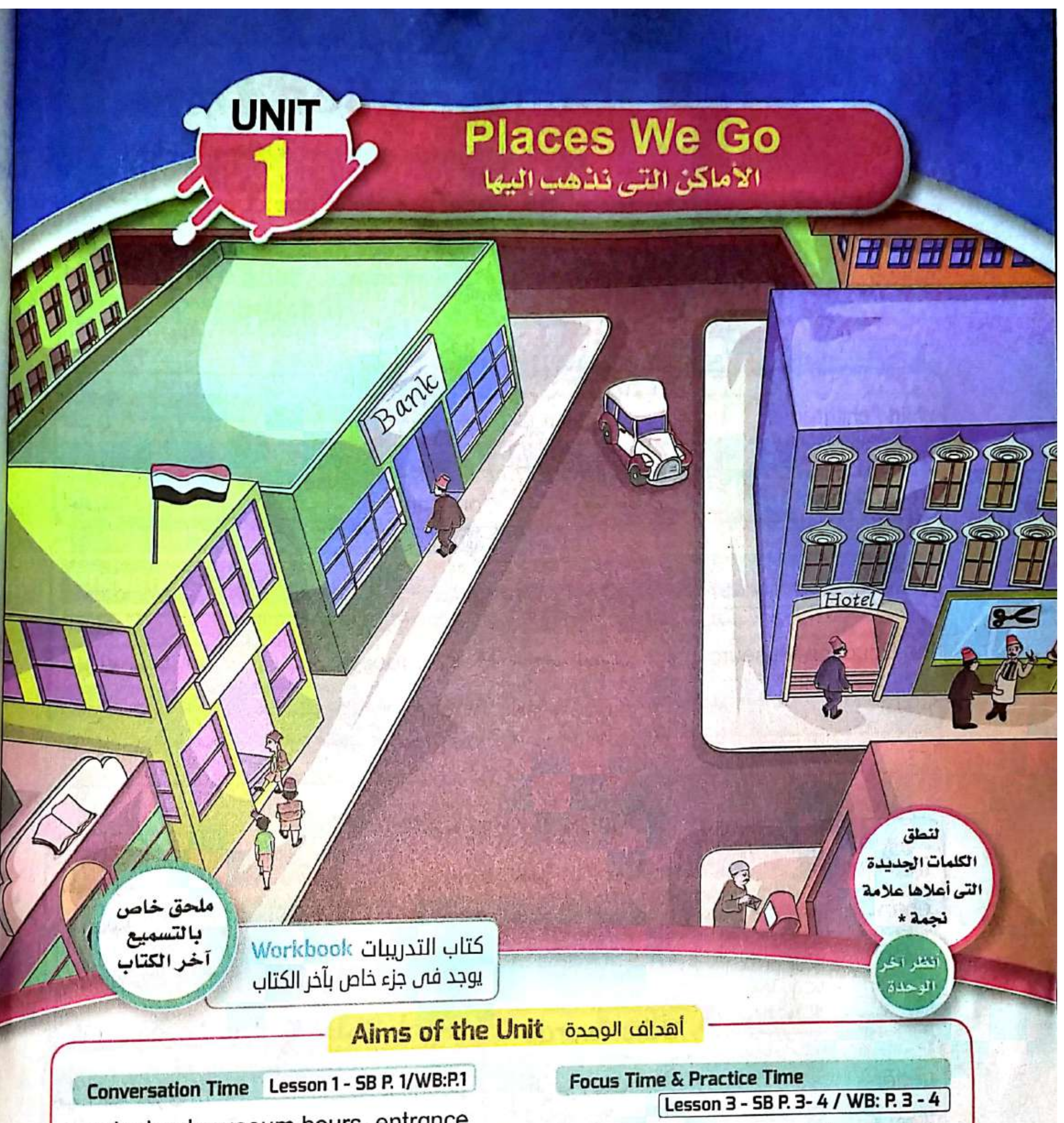
UNIT 1 Places We Go

الأماكن التى نذهب إليها



Aims of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

Conversation Time Lesson 1 - SB P. 1/WB:P.1

- ask about museum hours, entrance fees and exhibits over the telephone
- السؤال عن أوقات العمل بالمتاحف / بالمتحف، ورسوم الدخول للأماكن والمعروضات بالمتحف عبر التليفون
- identify speakers in a conversation
- التعرف على المتحدثين فى محادثة

Word Time Lesson 2 - SB P. 2 /WB: P. 2

- ask about past locations
- السؤال عن المواقع / الأماكن التى كانت موجوده فى الماضى
- identify public buildings and structures
- التعرف على الأماكن [illegible] العامة

Focus Time & Practice Time Lesson 3 - SB P. 3- 4 / WB: P. 3 - 4

- use prepositions of location
- استخدام حروف الجر الخاصة بالأماكن
- Yes / No question with (was)
- السؤال بـ (هل كان يوجد.......؟)

Reading Time & Your Time Lesson 4 - SB P. 5 - 6 / WB: P. 5 - 6

- read a historical narrative
- قراءة لسرد تاريخي
- vocabulary (public buildings & structures)
- مفردات (مبانى وأماكن عامة)



Lesson 1 Conversation Time

وقت المحادثة

SB Page: 1 • WB Page: 1



Vocabulary مفردات

People أشخاص

child / children	طفل/أطفال	*Egyptian	مصرى
adult	شخص بالغ/ راشد	Egyptians	مصريون
*receptionist	موظف/موظفة استقبال	*foreigners	أجانب

Places أماكن

the Egyptian Museum	المتحف المصرى	Mummy rooms	حجرات المومياوات
Cairo	القاهرة	*theatre	مسرح

Adjectives صفات

free	مجانى	nice	لطيف/ رائع
open	مفتوح	welcome	مُرَّحب به

Other words كلمات أخرى

under	أقل من / تحت
*hours	ساعات (العمل)
thanks = thank you	أشكرك
holiday	إجازة
daily = every day	يوميًا

pound / *L.E.	جنيه / جنيه مصرى
except	ما عدا
help	يساعد / مساعدة
*A.M.	صباحًا
*P.M.	مساءً

Days of the week أيام الأسبوع

Sunday	الأحد	Monday	الإثنين	Tuesday	الثلاثاء
Wednesday	الأربعاء	Thursday	الخميس	Friday	الجمعة
Saturday	السبت				

Lesson 1



Question words — كلمات الاستفهام

Wh-Questions			
What?	ما/ماذا؟ (السؤال عن الأشياء)	How?	كيف؟ (السؤال عن الكيفية أو الحال)
When?	متى؟ (السؤال عن الوقت)	How much?	كم؟ (السؤال عن الثمن أو الكمية)
Where?	أين؟ (السؤال عن المكان)	How many?	كم عدد؟ (السؤال عن عدد الأشياء)
Why?	لماذا؟ (السؤال عن السبب)		

Conjugation of verbs — تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs — أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضي
help	يساعد	helped
open	يفتح	opened
include	يشتمل على	included
thank for	يشكر على	thanked for

Irregular verbs — أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضي
cost	يتكلف / يكلف	cost
get in	يدخل (مكان)	got in
have / has	يمتلك / لديه	had

Read and learn — اقرأ وتعلم





- How can I help you? — كيف يمكنني مساعدتك؟
- What are your hours? — ما هي مواعيد العمل (الزيارة) لديكم؟
- We're open from 9:00 to 7:00. — نحن نفتح من الساعة التاسعة إلى الساعة السابعة.
- Are you open on Fridays? — هل تفتحون أيام الجمعة؟
- We're open daily. — نحن نفتح يوميًا / كل يوم.
- How much does it cost to get in? — كم تكلفة الدخول؟
- It's two pounds for Egyptians. — جنيهان للمصريين.
- Children under five are free. — الأطفال تحت سن الخامسة يدخلون مجانًا.
- Does that include the Mummy rooms? — هل هذا يشتمل على غرف / حجرات المومياوات؟
- Thanks for your help. — شكراً على مساعدتك.
- Have a nice day. — أتمنى لك يومًا سعيدًا.





(A) Listen and repeat. Point to the speakers. Then listen again.

استمع وردد. قم بالإشارة إلى المتحدثين ثم استمع مرة أخرى.

1

Receptionist : Good morning, the Egyptian Museum.
How can I help you?



2

Kareem : Hi! What are your hours?

Receptionist : We're open from 9:00 to 7:00.



3

Kareem : Are you open on Fridays?

Receptionist : Yes. We're open daily.



4

Kareem : How much does it cost to get in?

Receptionist : It's two pounds for Egyptians and twenty pounds for foreigners. Children under five are free.



5

Kareem : Does that include the Mummy rooms?

Receptionist : No, it doesn't.



6 **Kareem** : Thanks for your help.

Receptionist : You're welcome.
Have a nice day.



B **Role-play the conversation:** يقوم التلاميذ بتمثيل المحادثة معاً .

Language Notes ملاحظات لغوية

1 Open / help

بعض الكلمات تستخدم كصفة وفعل مثل كلمة **open** :

- The museum is **open** . • (صفة بمعنى مفتوح).
- The theatre **opened** two years ago. • (فعل بمعنى يفتح).

نستخدم بعض الكلمات كفعل واسم مثل كلمة **help** :

- How can I **help** you? • (فعل بمعنى يساعد).
- Thanks for your **help** . • (اسم بمعنى مساعدة).

2 Prepositions حروف الجر

نستخدم حرف الجر **on** قبل أيام الاسبوع وقبل كلمة **holiday** .

- We are open **on** → Fridays. / → holidays.

نستخدم حرف الجر **under** بمعنى تحت أو أقل من عندما يأتى بعده رقم :

- The ball is **under** the table.
- Children **under** ten are free.

من .... إلى .... / from .... to .... :

- We're open **from** 10 **to** 8.

نستخدم حرف الجر **for** مع كلمة **thank** بمعنى يشكر على :

- **Thanks for** the flowers.

3 How many? / How much?

- نستخدم **How many?** للسؤال عن العدد.
- نستخدم **How much?** للسؤال عن السعر أو الكمية.

- How many **pencils** do you have? - Three pencils.
- How much are the **pencils**? - They're five pounds each.

4 cost for + (شخص) / cost to + inf. (يتكلف مصدر الفعل)

- يأتي بعد (cost for) اسم ، ويأتي بعد cost to مصدر الفعل .

- How much does it cost **for** adults / children?
- How much does it cost **to** get in?



5 كلمات متشابهة في النطق

- هناك بعض الكلمات المتشابهة في النطق وطريقة الكتابة لكنها مختلفة في المعنى لاحظها جيدا:

to	إلى	two	اثنين	too	أيضا
Where?	أين ؟	were	كانوا	we're	نحن نكون

6 Question

- نستخدم **Verb to be** للسؤال عن الصفة أو الاسم بمعنى "هل...؟".

- **Are** you **open** on Fridays? (هنا open صفة)
- **Is** this your **school**?

- وللسؤال عن الفعل نستخدم **Do / Does / Did** بمعنى "هل...؟".

- **Does** that **include** the Mummy rooms?
- **Do** you **like** ice cream?

Language Functions وظائف لغوية

1 Offering help : • تقديم المساعدة :

- How can I help you? كيف يمكنني أن أساعدك ؟
  = What can I do for you?
- I want a ticket, please. أريد تذكرة، من فضلك .



2 Asking about the museum hours : • السؤال عن مواعيد عمل المتحف .

A : What are your hours? ما هي مواعيد العمل (الزيارة) لديكم؟
  = How many hours are you open?

B : We're open from 9:00 to 7: 00. نحن نفتح من الساعة التاسعة إلى الساعة السابعة.

A : Are you open on Fridays? هل المكان مفتوح أيام الجمعة؟

B : Yes. We're open daily. نعم . المكان مفتوح يوميًا .

3 Thanking someone : • شكر شخص ما :

A : Thanks. / Thank you for your help. شكرًا على مساعدتك.

B : You're welcome. الرد: عفوًا / على الرحب والسعة.

4 Wishing : • التمنى:

A : Have a nice day. أتمنى لك يومًا سعيدًا.

B : Thank you. / Thanks. الرد: أشكرك.

Lesson 1 EXERCISES تدريبات

1 Listen and circle: استمع وضع دائرة:

نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

1. a. It costs five pounds. b. Children under four are free.

الدقهلية - إدارة المنصورة 2016

2. a. We're open from 9.00 to 7.00. b. We're open from 10:00 to 8:00.

الشرقية - إدارة فاقوس 2020

3. a. Where's your school? b. Where's the Egyptian Museum?
4. a. How do you spend your weekend? b. How do you spend your day?

الاسكندرية - إدارة شرق الاسكندرية 2019

2 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل:



نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار | الغربية - إدارة شرق طنطا 2018

A : Is it the Egyptian Museum?

B : Yes, it ❶ ....

A : ❷ .... are you open?

B : We are open ❸ ....

A : How much does it ❹ .... to get in?

B : It's two pounds for Egyptians.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

الجيزة - إدارة أوسيم 2018

1- How .... does it cost to get in?

a many b much c old d tall

2- We .... open daily. (الشرقية - إدارة مشتول السوق 2018)

a had b are c does d have

3- Are you open .... Fridays? (القاهرة - إدارة الزاوية الحمراء 2018)

a at b on c in d with

4- We are open .... except on holidays. (بورسعيد - إدارة بور فؤاد 2020)

a day b week c month d daily

5- .... that include the Mummy rooms? (الدقهلية - إدارة شربين 2016)

a Do b Does c Are d Am

6- .... can I help you? (المنوفية - إدارة أشمون 2020)

a Who b How c Which d Whose

7- In the museum, children under five can get in for ....

a cost b fine c food d free

8- Thanks for your ....

a help b helps c helping d helped

9- What are your .... ? - From 9:00 to 5:00. (الغربية - إدارة شرق طنطا 2019)

a months b time c hours d days

4 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one:

ضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة واستبدلها بكلمة مناسبة :

					Answer
1	morning	night	afternoon	except	....
2	where	what	adult	how	....
3	under	daily	on	for	....
4	chips	hour	day	month	....
5	May	Friday	Sunday	Tuesday	....

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة ثم أجب عن الأسئلة :

My name is Kareem. I go to the Egyptian Museum with my family every week. The museum's hours are from 10 to 9 and it is open every day. It costs five pounds to get in. Children under ten are free, so my little sister gets in without paying money. We have a nice time there.

A- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1- The museum is open ....

a day b week c daily d month

2- The underlined word "It" refers to the ....

a time   b museum   c money   d music

B- Answer the following questions:

3- What are the museum's hours?

....

4- How much does it cost to get in the museum?

....

6 Write a paragraph of SEVEN (7) sentences:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من سبعة جمل:

"The Egyptian Museum"

....

....

....

7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات الآتية لتكون جملاً صحيحة:

1- are - hours - What - your?   أسيوط - إدارة منفلوط 2020

....

2- a - Have - day - nice.   المنيا - إدارة العدوة 2019

....

3- under - Children - free - are - five.   اسوان- إدارة إدفو 2018

....

4- pounds - twenty - It's - foreigners - for.

....

5- that - Does - include - rooms - Mummy - the?   القليوبية - إدارة قليوب 2018

....

6- it - does - How much - to - cost - get in?   بني سويف - إدارة الفشن 2018

....

8 Punctuate the following sentences:

ضع علامات ترقيم للجمل الآتية:

1- we re open daily.   القليوبية - إدارة شرق شبرا الخيمة 2020

....

2- are you open on Fridays   الدقهلية - إدارة أجا 2019

....



Word Time

وقت الكلمات

SB Page: 2 • WB Page: 2

Public buildings مبانٍ عامة

school	مدرسة	library	مكتبة
barber's shop = barber's	محل الحلاقة	bank	بنك
hotel	فندق	train station	محطة القطار
post office	مكتب البريد	pavement	رصيف (شارع)
bridge	كوبرى	theatre	مسرح

Vocabulary مفردات

sure	بالتأكيد	Be careful.	كن حذرًا.
haircut	قصة شعر	heavy	ثقيل
the show	العرض المسرحي	No problem.	لا توجد مشكلة.

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضي
need	يحتاج إلى	needed
post	يرسل خطاباً	posted

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضي
let	يسمح	let
see	يرى	saw

Verbs and Nouns أفعال تأتي مع أسماء

• تساعد الأفعال و الأسماء التالية الطالب في تكوين جُمل عن الأماكن التي درسها بالصفحة السابقة:
والآن بعد قراءة هذه الفقرة كون جُمل على كل مكان مستخدما هذه الكلمات كالمثال :

- I can post a letter at the post office.
- I can read books at the library.

take a train (at a train station)	يأخذ / يستقل قطار (في محطة القطار)
post a letter (at a post office)	يرسل خطاب بالبريد (فى مكتب البريد)
see a film / play (at a theatre)	يشاهد فيلم / مسرحية (فى المسرح)
sleep (at a hotel)	ينام (في فندق)
read books (at a library)	يقرأ كتب (فى مكتبة)
walk on (a pavement)	يمشي (على الرصيف)
get / need a haircut (at a barber's shop)	يحتاج قصة شعر (فى محل الحلاقة)
study (at school)	يتعلم (يَدْرس) بالمدرسة
get money (at the bank)	يحصل على النقود (من البنك)

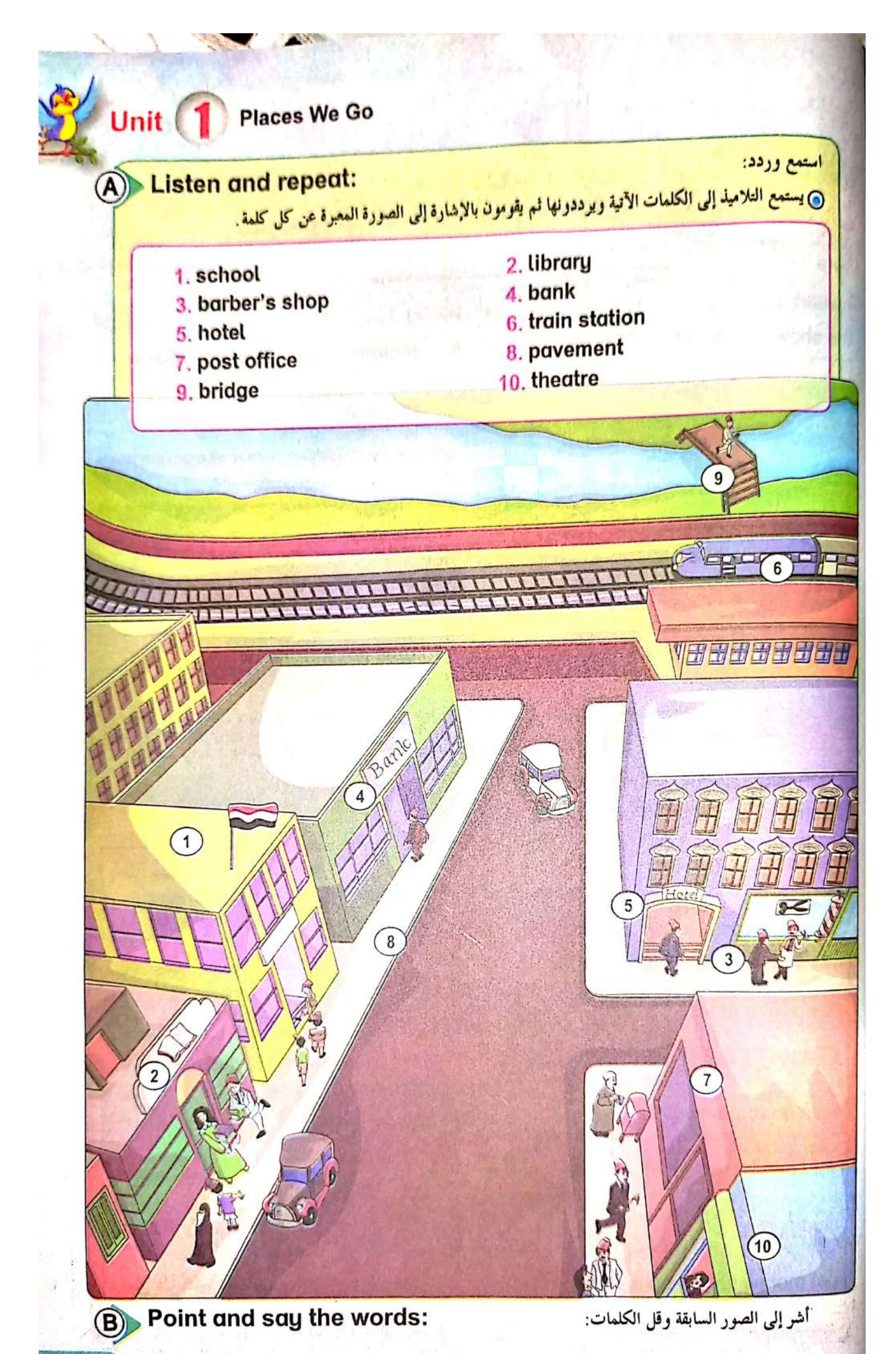
Unit 1 Places We Go

A Listen and repeat:

استمع وردد:

يستمع التلاميذ إلى الكلمات الآتية ويرددونها ثم يقومون بالإشارة إلى الصورة المعبرة عن كل كلمة.

1. school
2. library
3. barber's shop
4. bank
5. hotel
6. train station
7. post office
8. pavement
9. bridge
10. theatre



B Point and say the words:

أشر إلى الصور السابقة وقل الكلمات:





C Listen and point.

استمع وأشر :

• استمع وأشر إلى صور الأماكن بالصفحة السابقة.

- Bank.	- Pavement.	- Post office.	- School.
- Bridge.	- Library.	- Theatre.	- Hotel.
- Barber's shop.		- Train station.	

• *Now listen and point to the speakers.*

• انظر إلى الصورة السابقة وأشر إلى المتحدثين.

1

A : Are you open on Sundays?

B : Yes, I'm open from 7:00 to 10:00.

A : Good. I need a haircut.

2

A : Dad, can we see the show?

B : Sure. How much does it cost to get in?

A : It's one pound for adults. Children are free.

3

A : Let me help you, Miss Sarah.

B : Thanks. Be careful. They're heavy.

A : No problem.

Answers 

1- Men outside barber's shop — رجلان خارج محل الحلاقة

2- Father and daughter by theatre — أب وابنته بالقرب من المسرح

3- Boy and woman outside library — ولد وسيدة خارج المكتبة

Lesson 2 EXERCISES

تدريبات

1 Listen and circle:

استمع وضع دائرة :



نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

1. a. He went to the hotel. b. He went to school. الغربية - إدارة بسيون 2018
2. a. She was at the school. b. She was at the library.
3. a. Can we see the show? b. Can we go to the museum?
4. a. How much does it cost to get in? b. How much does it cost for adults?



2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة :

1- We can watch plays (مسرحيات) at the .... — بنى سويف - إدارة سمسطا 2020
a library b school c hotel d theatre

2- I walked on the .... over the Nile. — القليوبية - إدارة بنها 2018
a bridge b hotel c library d school

3- Are schools open .... Fridays?
a in b at c on d in

4- We wait for the train at the .... — السويس - إدارة السويس 2019
a train station b bank c bridge d shop

5- Foreigners usually stay at ....
a schools b museums c bridges d hotels

6- You can borrow books from the .... — قنا - إدارة فرشوط 2017
a theatre b restaurant c library d station

7- I get a haircut at the .... — دمياط - إدارة كفر سعد 2016
a school b hotel c theatre d barber's shop

8- I was at the .... to read a book. — الاسماعيلية - إدارة فايد 2020
a hotel b library c restaurant d hospital

3 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one:

ضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة واستبدلها بكلمة مناسبة :

					Answer
1	need	cinema	let	see	....
2	open	read	get	saw	....
3	money	bike	plane	train	....
4	hotel	school	car	library	....
5	bank	library	theatre	show	....

4 Read the passage and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة ثم أجب عن الأسئلة :

الغربية - إدارة شرق المحلة 2020

Nabil is in my friend. He lives in Cairo. He is in grade six in a primary school. Nabil's favourite subject is English. His father works in a hospital and his mother is a teacher. He visits his grandfather on Friday. His teachers like him because he is clever and always helps others.

A- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1- Nabil is in grade ....
a two b three c five d six

2- His mother works in a ....
a bank b hotel c hospital d school

B- Answer the following questions:

3- Why do teachers like Nabil? ....

4- When does Nabil visit his grandfather? ....

5 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات الآتية لتكون جملاً صحيحة :

1- you - open - Fridays - Are - on?

الدقهلية - إدارة أجا 2020

....

2- pound - adults - It's - for - one.

كفر الشيخ - إدارة قوة 2016

....

3- on - walk - People - pavement - the - should.

....

4- need - Do - you - haircut - a?

....

6 Write an email of SEVEN (7) sentences:

أكتب ايميل من سبعة (٧) جمل :

To your friend Saleh to invite him to visit Egypt and see good places. Your name is Ayman and your email's address is ayman@yahoo.com and your friend's email address is saleh@hotmail.com.

New Message

To .... **Cc** **Bcc**

From ....

Subject ....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

7 Punctuate the following sentences:

ضع علامات ترقيم للجمل الآتية :

1- huda's brother lives in Tanta ....

2- Where did ahmed go yesterday

القليوبية - إدارة طوخ 2020

....



Lesson 3

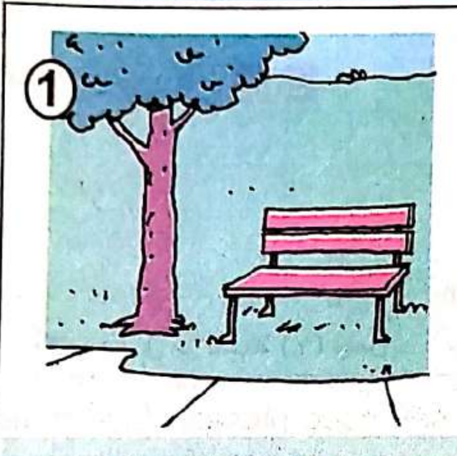
Focus Time Practice Time وقت التدريب

SB Pages: 3 - 4 • WB Pages: 3 - 4

Prepositions of locations حروف جر المواقع والأماكن

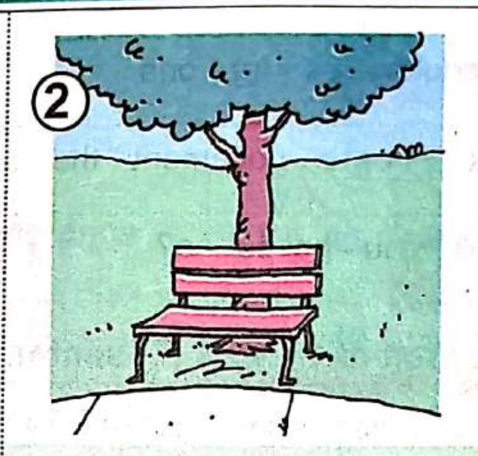


A Listen and repeat: استمع وردد :



beside بجانب

- The tree is beside the seat.



behind خلف

- The tree is behind the seat.

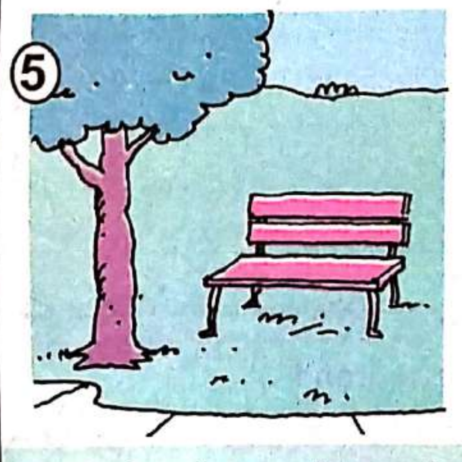


across from على الجانب الآخر من

- The tree is across from the seat.

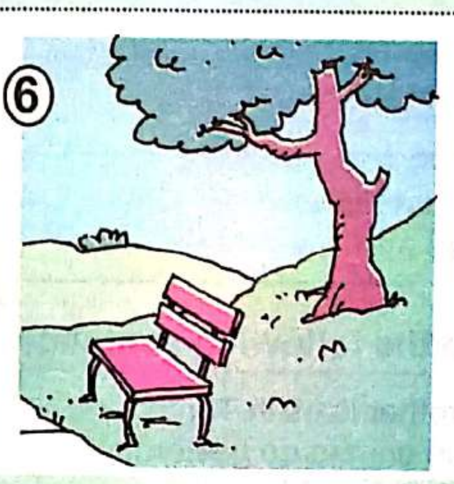
in front of أمام

- The tree is in front of the seat.



near بالقرب من / قريب من

- The tree is near the seat.



above فوق/ أعلى

- The tree is above the seat.



(B) Listen and repeat:

استمع وردد :

A: Was there a library beside the post office? B: Yes, there was.

A: Was there a library beside the post office? B: No, there wasn't.

(C) Look at page 2. Listen and point:

• انظر إلى صفحة ٢ بكتاب المدرسة ثم اشر إلى ما تسمعه.

A: Was there a bridge beside the school? B: No, there wasn't.

A: Was there a theatre across from the library? B: Yes, there was.

A: Was there a train station behind the hotel? B: Yes, there was.

Grammar

قواعد لغوية



1 There is / are يوجد فى المضارع

• لاحظ استخدام (يوجد للمفرد) **there is** / (يوجد للجمع) **there are**

Positive فى الاثبات

There	is	a hotel near the school.	(اسم مفرد)
	are	two schools across from the library.	(اسم جمع)

Negative فى النفى

There	isn't = is not	a hotel in front of the barber's shop.
	aren't = are not	two schools beside the theatre.

Yes/ No questions للسؤال بـ «هل...؟»

Is	there	a hotel above the post office?
Are		two schools behind the bank?

Short answers الإجابات المختصرة

Yes, there is. إثبات / No, there isn't. نفى

Yes, there are. إثبات / No, there aren't. نفى



2 There was / were كان يوجد (فى الماضى)

• لاحظ استخدام (كان يوجد للمفرد) **there was** / (كان يوجد للجمع) **there were**

Positive فى الإثبات

There	was	a bank behind the train station.	(اسم مفرد)
	were	two hotels near the theatre.	(اسم جمع)

Negative فى النفى

There	wasn't = was not	a library beside the school.
	weren't = were not	two hotels near the bridge.

Yes/ No questions للسؤال بـ «هل...؟»

Was	there	a post office in front of the pavement?
Were		two hotels across from the barber's shop?

Short answers الإجابات المختصرة

Yes, there was. إثبات / No, there wasn't. نفى

Yes, there were. إثبات / No, there weren't. نفى

• لاحظ بالجُمل السابقة عندما نقول **There was / were** يعنى أنه كان يوجد وغير موجود الآن.

- There was a train station behind my house.

كان يوجد محطة القطار خلف منزلى (ولم يعد موجود الآن).





(A) Listen and repeat. Then practise with a partner:

• استمع وردد ثم تُدرب مع زميلك. انظر إلى الصورة والكلمات المعطاة فى تكوين السؤال والاجابة بـ (No أو Yes) .

A- Was there a bank near the school?

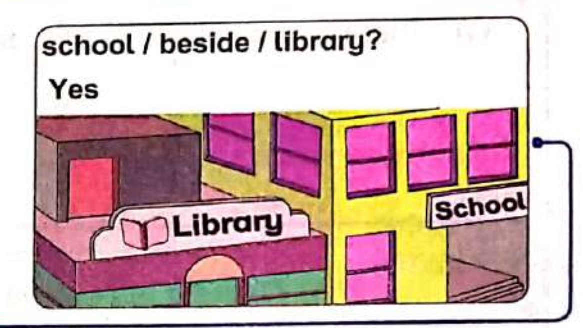
B- Yes, there was.



1. Was there a school beside the library?

Yes, there was.

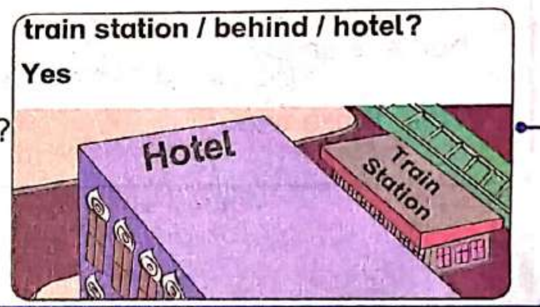
school / beside / library?
Yes



2. Was there a train station behind the hotel?

Yes, there was.

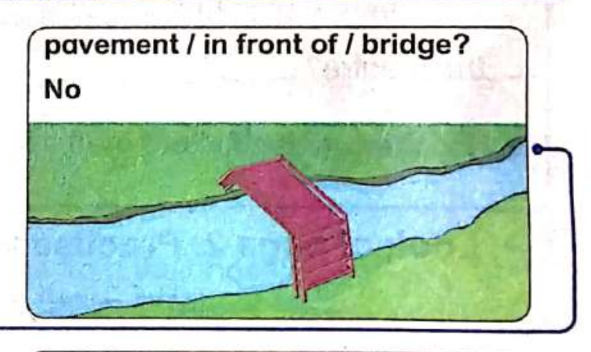
train station / behind / hotel?
Yes



3. Was there a pavement in front of the bridge?

No, there wasn't.

pavement / in front of / bridge?
No



4. Was there a barber's shop near the post office?

Yes, there was.

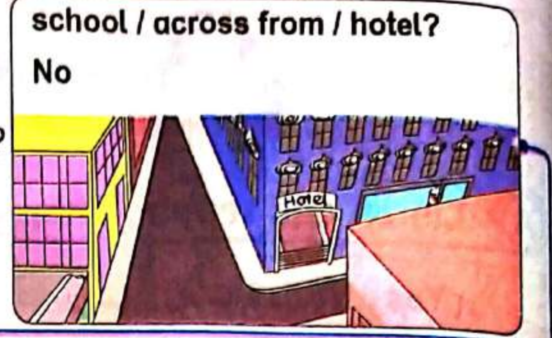
barber's shop / near / post office?
Yes



5

school / across from / hotel?

No



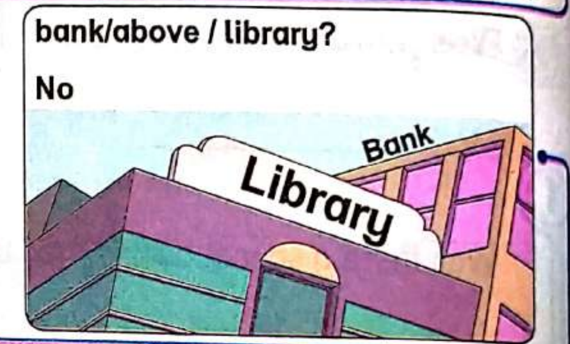
Was there a school across from the hotel?

No, there wasn't.

6

bank/above / library?

No



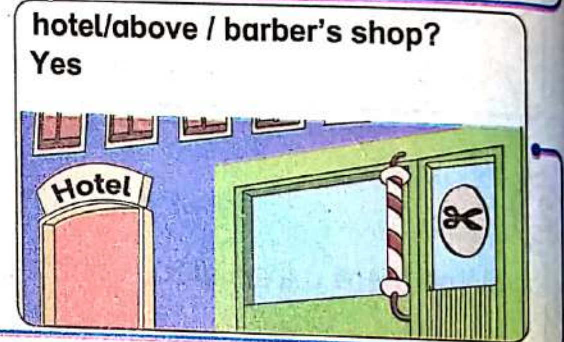
Was there a bank above the library?

No, there wasn't.

7

hotel/above / barber's shop?

Yes



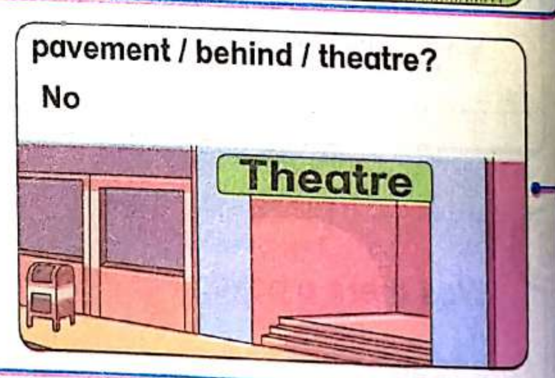
Was there a hotel above the barber's shop?

Yes, there was.

8

pavement / behind / theatre?

No



Was there a pavement behind the theatre?

No, there wasn't.

B Look at page 2. Practise with a partner.

ينظر التلاميذ إلى الصورة بالصفحة (٢) بالكتاب المدرسى ثم يتدربون على المحادثة كمايلى:

S1: (pointing to the barber's shop)

يشير التلميذ الأول إلى محل الحلاقة ويقول:

Was there a hotel above the barber's shop?

هل كان هناك فندق فوق محل الحلاقة؟

S2: Yes, there was. نعم كان يوجد.

ويجيب الطالب الثانى حسب الصورة بـ(Yes / No)

Ⓒ Listen and chant: استمع وغن:

يستمع التلاميذ إلى أغنية (Yes, There Was! No, There Wasn't) ويرددونها:





The SONG






Was there a theatre beside the school?

Yes, there was! No, there wasn't!

Was there a barber's shop beside the school?

Yes, there was! No, there wasn't!

Was there a post office near the bank?

Yes, there was! No, there wasn't!

Was there a train station near the bank?

Yes, there was! No, there wasn't!

Was there a library across from the bridge?

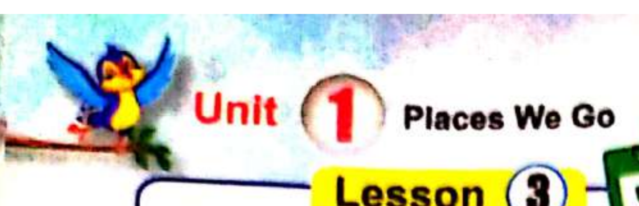
Yes, there was! No, there wasn't!

Was there a hotel across from the bridge?

Yes, there was! No, there wasn't!







Lesson 3 EXERCISES تدريبات

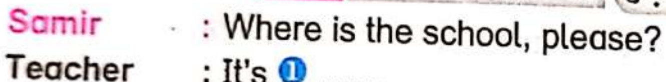
1 Listen and circle: استمع وضع دائرة:



نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

1. a. Yes, there was. b. No, there wasn't. 2017 بورسعيد - إدارة بورسعيد
2. a. A bank. b. A hotel.
3. a. Was there a bridge above the river? b. Was there a tree above the river? 2018 القليوبية - إدارة الخانكة
5. a. Was there a train station near the bridge? b. Was there a theatre above the bank?

2 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل:



نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

Samir : Where is the school, please?
Teacher : It's ❶ .... the bank.
Samir : Where's the post ❷ ....?
Teacher : It's ❸ .... from the hotel.
Samir : Is it in ❹ .... of the park?
Teacher : Yes, it is.
Samir : Thanks a lot.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1- Was there a bank across .... the theatre? 2020 دمياط - إدارة كفر سعد
ⓐ of ⓑ from ⓒ above ⓓ on

2- .... Soha at school yesterday? 2018 القليوبية - إدارة كفر شكر
ⓐ Is ⓑ Are ⓒ Were ⓓ Was

3- Was there a hospital near the hotel? - Yes, there .... 2019 قنا - إدارة نجع حماد
ⓐ isn't ⓑ wasn't ⓒ were ⓓ was

4- Yes, there is a bookshop .... from our school. 2017 المنيا - إدارة العدوة
ⓐ across ⓑ above ⓒ front ⓓ near

5- .... there a hotel in that city?
ⓐ Are ⓑ Was ⓒ Were ⓓ Did

6- .... a cat in the house?
ⓐ There is ⓑ Are there ⓒ Was there ⓓ Were there

7- There .... a school behind the post office. 2020 سوهاج - إدارة المنشاة
ⓐ were ⓑ are ⓒ is ⓓ do

8- The barber's .... is beside the bank.

a station b bank c shop d school

4 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one:

ضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة واستبدلها بكلمة مناسبة :

Answer

1	sleep	borrow	were	walk	....
2	Sunday	behind	Saturday	Thursday	....
3	beside	hotel	above	across	....
4	he	they	there	she	....
5	flower	school	library	post office	....

5 Write a paragraph of SEVEN (7) sentences:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من سبعة جمل :

" Places in my city"

....

....

....

....

....

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات الآتية لتكون جملاً صحيحة :

القليوبية - إدارة الخانكة 2020

1- here - Yes, - hotel - was - the.

....

2- train - near - There's - station - the library - a.

....

3- there - beside - a school - Is - home - your?

....

الشرقية - إدارة شرق الزقازيق 2020

4- behind - Was - there - a theatre - pavement - the?

....

7 Punctuate the following sentences:

ضع علامات ترقيم للجمل الآتية :

الجيزة - إدارة الدقى 2019

1- Were ayman and Ehab in class

....

2- There is a pavement in front of Mohamed s house

....

* انظر آخر الوحدة قبل الاختبار هناك ارشادات هامة لحل سؤال الترتيب.



Lesson 4

Reading Time Your Time

وقت القراءة

SB Pages: 5 - 6 • WB Pages: 5 - 6



Vocabulary مفردات

New Words كلمات جديدة

invent	يخترع	history	تاريخ
first	أول	churn	ماكينة صناعة الآيس كريم
factory	مصنع	cone	قمع / مخروط
every	كل	a lot of	كثير من
flavours	نكهات (مكسبات طعم/ مذاق)	vanilla	فانيليا

Food طعام

tomatoes	طماطم	pickle	مخلل
bread	خبز	chocolate	شيكولاتة
ice cream	آيس كريم	dessert	تحلية

Places أماكن

the United States	الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية	Baltimore	بولتيمور (مدينة أمريكية)
New York	مدينة نيويورك	St. Louis	سانت لويس (مدينة أمريكية)
America	أمريكا	shop	محل
grocery store	متجر بقالة	town	مدينة

Other words كلمات أخرى

long history	تاريخ طويل	play cards	يلعب كوتشينة
favourite	مفضل	Who?	من (للعاقل)؟
Americans	أمريكان		
favour	معروف / فضل		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضي
invent	يخترع	invented
open	يفتح	opened
use	يستخدم	used

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضي
know	يعرف	knew
make	يصنع	made
buy	يشترى	bought



Lesson 4



Read and learn اقرأ وتعلم

We don't know who invented ice cream. نحن لا نعرف من الذي اخترع الآيس كريم.

Ice cream has a long history in the United States.
الآيس كريم له تاريخ طويل في الولايات المتحدة.

In 1843, Nancy Johnson invented the first ice cream churn.
في عام ١٨٤٣ ، اخترعت "نانسي جونسون" أول آلة لعمل الآيس كريم.

The first ice cream factory opened in Baltimore in 1851.
تم افتتاح أول مصنع آيس كريم في مدينة "بولتيمور" عام ١٨٥١.

A man in St, Louis made the first ice cream cone in 1896.
صنع رجل في "سانت لويس" أول آيس كريم على شكل مخروط في عام ١٨٩٦.

Ice cream is now one of America's favourite desserts.
الآن الآيس كريم هو واحد من أفضل الحلويات الأمريكية.

The first ice cream shop opened in New York in 1876.
تم افتتاح أول محل للآيس كريم في نيويورك في عام ١٨٧٦.

Now there is an ice cream shop in every town. الآن هناك محل للآيس كريم في كل مدينة.

You can buy ice cream at every grocery store. تستطيع أن تشترى الآيس كريم من أى متجر بقالة.

You can find a lot of flavours, from tomato to pickle.
تستطيع أن تجد كثير من النكهات بداية من الطماطم حتى المخلل.

America's favourite flavours are vanilla and chocolate.
النكهات المفضلة في أمريكا هي الفانيليا والشيكولاتة.

(A) Listen and read along: استمع واقرأ:

Ice Cream in America

Who invented ice cream? We don't know, but ice cream has a long history in the United States. In 1843, Nancy Johnson invented the first ice cream churn. The first ice cream factory opened in Baltimore in 1851. A man in St. Louis made the first ice cream cone in 1896. Ice cream is now one of America's favourite desserts.

The first ice cream shop opened in New York in 1876. Now there is an ice cream shop in every town, and you can buy ice cream at every grocery store. You can find a lot of flavours, from tomato to pickle. America's favourite flavours are vanilla and chocolate. What's your favourite?



New Words

invent	history
first	churn
factory	cone
every	a lot of
flavour	vanilla



Unit 1 Places We Go

B Listen and circle (True) or (False):

يقوم التلميذ بالاستماع للقطعة السابقة ثم يضع دائرة حول True إذا كانت الإجابة صحيحة ودائرة حول False إذا كانت الاجابة خاطئة .

1	We know who invented ice cream.	True	(False)
2	The first ice cream churn was invented in 1846.	True	False
3	The first ice cream shop opened in New York.	True	False
4	Americans don't like vanilla ice cream.	True	False

C Read the question. Write the answer:

اقرأ السؤال واكتب الإجابة:

1- When did the first ice cream shop open?

The first ice cream shop opened in 1876.

2- Who invented the first ice cream churn?

....

3- Where did the first ice cream factory open?

....

4- What flavours are America's favourites?

....

Workbook



A Read:

The Sandwich



The sandwich has a long history. In 1750, John Montagu invented the sandwich. He used bread and meat for the first sandwich. He liked to eat a sandwich and play cards. The sandwich is now one of America's favourite foods.

In the United States, there is a sandwich shop in every town, and you can buy sandwiches at every grocery store. You can make a sandwich at home, too!

B Read the question. Write the answer:

1- When did John Montagu invent the sandwich?

....

2- Where can you buy sandwiches in the United States?

....

3- Is the sandwich one of America's favourite foods?

....

4- What did John Montagu use for the first sandwich?

....





(A) Listen and answer the questions: استمع واجب عن الأسئلة:

1- Is there a library near your house?

Yes, there is. / No, there isn't.

2- Is there a library near your school?

....

3- Is there a theatre beside your house?

....

4- Is there a bank across from your school?

....

(B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1- .... invented ice cream?

a What b When c Who d Where

2- Where did the first ice cream factory .... ?

a open b opened c opening d opens

3- You can find a lot .... favourite flavours.

a of b on c at d in

4- My best .... is vanilla.

a flavour b kind c colour d size

5- A: Where can you borrow books? B: From the ....

a library b hotel c train station d theatre

(C) Review. Read and write the answers: راجع . اقرأ واكتب الإجابات:

1- Do you like going to museums?

....

2- Is there a bookshop beside your school?

....

3- How do you go to school?

....

4- Where do you get a haircut?

....





1 in فى

• نستخدم in قبل السنة وقبل الأماكن الكبيرة.

- Ice cream was invented in 1843.
- She lives in the United States.

in فى → 1843 / the United States

2 favourite (adj) + اسم (مفضل) / favourite (n) (المفضل)

- نستخدم كلمة favourite كصفة أو اسم كما يلى:

1. What's your favourite + اسم........? ما هو ..... المفضل لك؟

   What are your favourite flavours?

   My favourite flavours are vanilla and chocolate.

2. What's your favourite? ما هو الشيء المفضل لك؟

   Reading is my favourite. القراءة هى الشيء المفضل لى.

3 ,.....too أيضًا

• I can buy a sandwich. I can make it at home, too.

• لاحظ أن too توضع فى نهاية الجملة للربط بين جملتين مثبتتين.

4 America (دولة) أمريكا / American أمريكى الجنسية

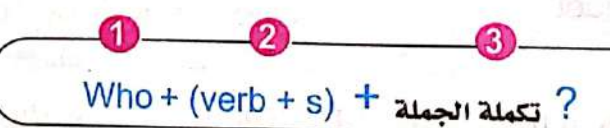
- America's favourite flavours are chocolate and vanilla.
- Americans don't like tomato ice cream.

5 Who...? من (للعاقل) ...؟

• تستخدم (Who) للسؤال عن الفاعل العاقل أو المفعول العاقل.

أولا للسؤال عن الفاعل

فى المضارع



• Who wants a pen?

Mona wants a pen.

في الماضي



- **Who** invented ice cream?
  We don't know.

• **لاحظ:** عدم استخدام فعل مساعد عند السؤال عن الفاعل

ثانيا للسؤال عن المفعول نستخدم do / does في المضارع البسيط و did في الماضي البسيط

① ② ③ ④ ⑤

Who + فعل مساعد + فاعل + مصدر الفعل + تكملة الجملة ?

- **Who** did Ahmed give an ice cream?
  Ahmed gave Salma an ice cream.

6 How do you go to school? كيف تذهب إلى المدرسة؟

للإجابة يمكن أن نقول :

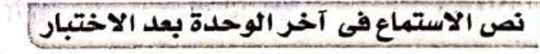
- **On** foot. — سيرًا على الأقدام.
- **By** bike / bicycle. — بالدراجة.
- **By** car / taxi / bus / train. — بالسيارة / بالتاكسى / بالأتوبيس / بالقطار.

Lesson 4 EXERCISES

تدريبات

1 Listen and circle: استمع وضع دائرة:





1. a. Vanilla. b. Chocolate. (بورسعيد - إدارة بور فؤاد 2018)
2. a. In 1843.* b. In 1876.
3. a. Who invented ice cream? b. Who invented the sandwich? (الشرقية - إدارة ديرب نجم 2018)
4. a. How much is chocolate ice cream? b. How much is vanilla ice cream?

* لقراءة السنوات بشكل صحيح انظر آخر الوحدة قبل الاختبار.

2 Listen and complete:

استمع وأكمل:

نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

Reham : Hello, Hoda. What are you doing?
Hoda : I'm buying an ice ❶ ....
Reham : What's your favourite ❷ ....?
Hoda : It's ❸ ....
Reham : Can you buy me one with a ❹ .... flavour?
Hoda : Yes, of course.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1- You can find a lot .... favourite flavours. (الجيزة - أطفيح/ SB 2019)
ⓐ of ⓑ on ⓒ at ⓓ in

2- Where did the first ice cream factory .... ? (أسيوط 2018)
ⓐ opens ⓑ opened ⓒ open ⓓ opening

3- .... invented the ice cream? (الفيوم 2018)
ⓐ What ⓑ When ⓒ Who ⓓ Where

4- My best .... is vanilla. (الغربية 2018)
ⓐ colour ⓑ flavour ⓒ time ⓓ size

5- Americans .... like pickle ice cream.
ⓐ doesn't ⓑ isn't ⓒ aren't ⓓ don't

6- We don't know who .... ice cream.
ⓐ played ⓑ wrote ⓒ opened ⓓ invented

7- The first ice cream factory opened .... 1851.
ⓐ at ⓑ in ⓒ on ⓓ of

8- A: Where can you borrow books? B: From the .... (القاهرة - المقطم/ SB 2019)
ⓐ library ⓑ hotel ⓒ train station ⓓ theatre

4 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one:

ضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة واستبدلها بكلمة مناسبة:

					Answer
1	history	bread	vanilla	chocolate	....
2	New York	Paris	Johnson	Cairo	....
3	cone	made	bought	knew	....
4	house	favourite	factory	shop	....
5	borrow	invent	use	dessert	....



5 Read the passage and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة ثم أجب عن الأسئلة :

شمال سيناء - إدارة رفح 2019

The sandwich is very famous in America. It was invented by an American man. He liked to eat a sandwich and play cards. It's now one of the America's favourite foods. There is a sandwich shop in every town. You can make a sandwich at home, too.

A- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1- The sandwich was invented by an American ....

a woman b man c girl d child

2- He liked to eat a sandwich and play ....

a cards b tennis c games d music

B- Answer the following questions:

3- Where can you make a sandwich

....

4- Is the sandwich one of America's favourite foods?

....

6 Write a paragraph of SEVEN (7) sentences: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من سبعة جمل:

الجيزة - إدارة الدقي 2019

" Ice cream in America"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....

7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات الآتية لتكون جملاً صحيحة :

كفر الشيخ - إدارة سيدي سالم 2020

1- invent - did - When - the - John - sandwich?

....

2- ice - Americans - vanilla - like - cream.

....

3- a - long - cream - Ice - history - has.

....

4- flavour - What's - favourite - your ?

القليوبية - ادارة العبور 2015

....







مفردات

Public buildings أماكن عامة

school	مدرسة	train station	محطة القطار
barber's shop	محل الحلاقة	post office	مكتب البريد
bank	بنك	pavement	رصيف (شارع)
hotel	فندق	bridge	كوبرى
library	مكتبة (للقراءة والاستعارة)	theatre	مسرح

Prepositions of locations حروف جر المواقع والأماكن

beside	بجوار	behind	خلف
across from	على الجانب الآخر	in front of	أمام
near	بالقرب من / قريب من	above	فوق / أعلى

Food طعام

ice cream	آيس كريم	dessert	التحلية
flavours	نكهات (مكسبات طعم)	pickle	مخلل
churn	آلة عمل الآيس كريم	vanilla	فانيليا
cone	قمع / مخروط	tomatoes	طماطم
chocolate	شيكولاتة	bread	خبز

People أشخاص

adult	شخص بالغ	Egyptian	مصرى
foreigners	أجانب	receptionist	موظف / موظفة استقبال

Other words كلمات أخرى

daily	يومياً	haircut	قصة شعر
the show	العرض	free	مجاناً
except	ماعدا		

Conjugation of verbs

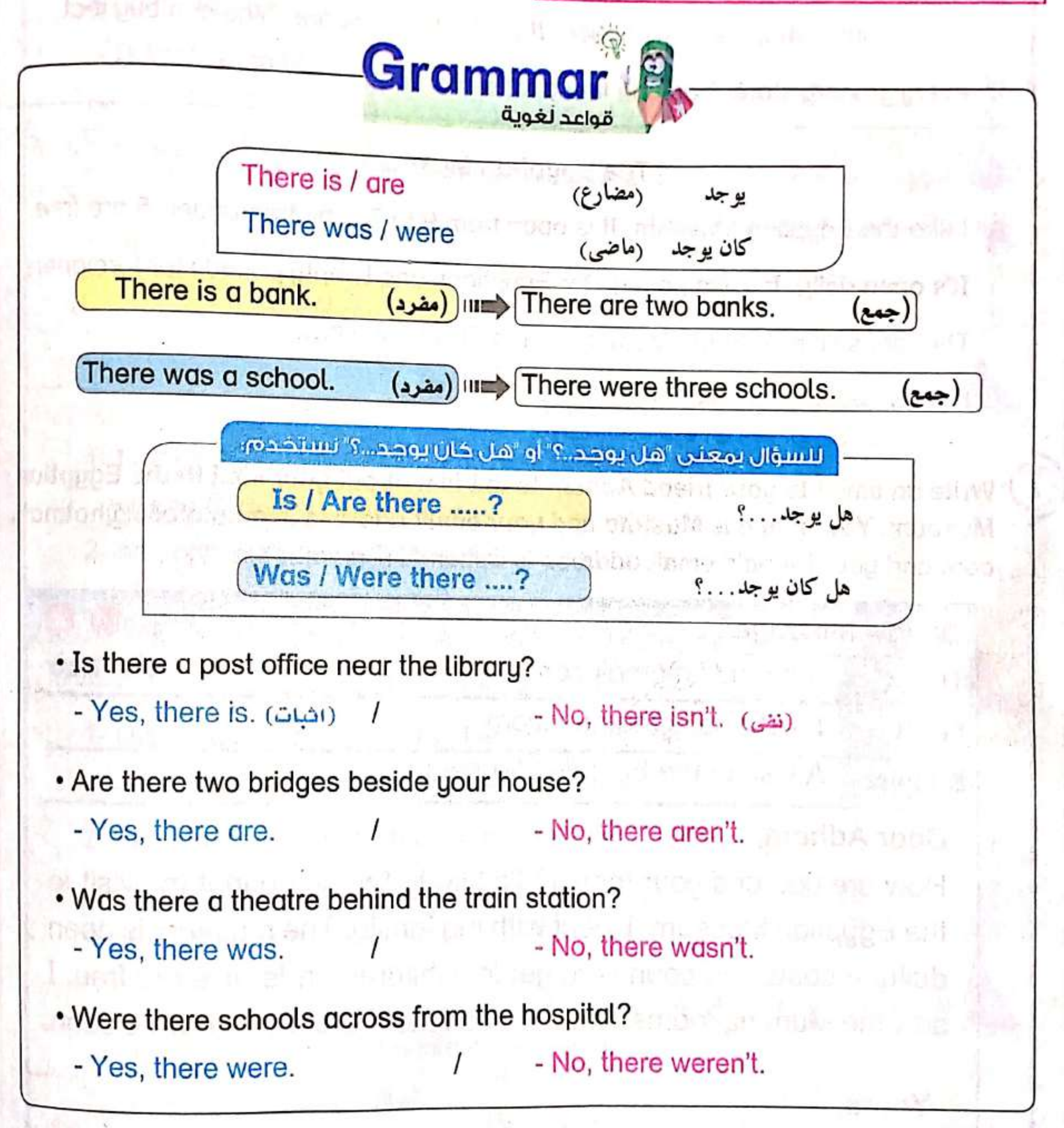
تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
include	يشمل / يشتمل على	included
invent	يخترع	invented
use	يستخدم	used

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
cost	يتكلف / يكلف	cost
get in	يدخل (مكان)	got in
buy	يشترى	bought



Grammar
قواعد لغوية

There is / are (مضارع) يوجد

There was / were (ماضى) كان يوجد

There is a bank. (مفرد) → There are two banks. (جمع)

There was a school. (مفرد) → There were three schools. (جمع)

للسؤال بمعنى "هل يوجد..؟" أو "هل كان يوجد...؟" نستخدم:

Is / Are there .....? هل يوجد...؟

Was / Were there ....? هل كان يوجد...؟

- Is there a post office near the library?
  - Yes, there is. (اثبات) / - No, there isn't. (نفى)
- Are there two bridges beside your house?
  - Yes, there are. / - No, there aren't.
- Was there a theatre behind the train station?
  - Yes, there was. / - No, there wasn't.
- Were there schools across from the hospital?
  - Yes, there were. / - No, there weren't.





Writing Skills

1 **Write a paragraph of SEVEN (7) sentences:**

" Ice cream"

A I like ice cream. It is my favourite dessert. My favourite flavour is chocolate. I buy it from a shop near my house. It costs three pounds. You can buy it at every grocery store. You can find a lot of flavours.

" The Egyptian Museum"

B I like the Egyptian Museum. It is open from 9 to 7. Children under 5 are free. It's open daily. It's two pounds for Egyptians and twenty pounds for foreigners. That doesn't include the Mummy rooms. It is a nice place.

2 **Write an email to your friend Adham to tell him about your visit to the Egyptian Museum. Your name is Mustafa and your email address is mustafa55@hotmail.com and your friend's email address is adham37@gmail.com.**

New Message

To	adham37@gmail.com	**Cc** **Bcc**
From	mustafa55@hotmail.com	
Subject	A visit to the Egyptian Museum	

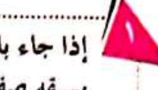
Dear Adham,

How are you and your family? I'd like to tell you about my visit to the Egyptian Museum. I went with my family. The museum is open daily. It costs five pounds to get in. Children under five are free. I saw the Mummy rooms. I had a nice time there. Please write soon.

Yours,
Mustafa

3 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

نقدم في هذه الفقرة ارشادات لحل سؤال ترتيب الكلمات:



١ إذا جاء بالسؤال مكانين يأتي المكان الذي يسبقه أداة النكرة **(a)** قبل المكان الذي يسبقه أداة المعرفة **(the)** أو يسبقه صفة ملكية **(your)**

1- a bank - Was - beside - library - there - the ?

- Was there a bank ❶ beside the library ❷ ?

2- your - Is - a hotel - there - near - house?

- Is there a hotel near your house?

٢ أحيانا يأتي السؤال في بعض امتحانات المحافظات بدون خط تحت الكلمة التي ستبدأ بها في هذه الحالة نبدأ بالكلمة التي تبدأ بحرف **(capital)**

1- day - Have - nice - a.

- Have a nice day.



٣ إذا كان بجملة كلمتان تبدآن بحرف كبير:

– إذا كان سؤال نبدأ بأداة الاستفهام أو فعل مساعد.

1- I - Can - help - you ?

- Can I help you ?

2- on - open - Are - Fridays - you?

- Are you open on Fridays?



٤ إذا كانت جملة خبرية نبحث عن الفاعل ونبدأ به الجملة والفاعل يمكن أن يكون ضمير أو اسم.

1- yesterday - Egyptian - We - the - Museum - visited.

- We visited the Egyptian Museum yesterday.

2- the - sandwich - invented - John Montagu.

- John Montagu invented the sandwich.



٥ إذا جاء بالجملة كلمة **ice cream** معها طعم الآيس كريم كالفانيليا أو الشيكولاته فأن الترتيب يكون.

- vanilla ice cream / chocolate ice cream.

- I - cream - vanilla - like - ice

- I like vanilla ice cream.





١ كلمات بها حروف لا تنطق (silent)

foreigners لا تنطق حرف g
hours لا تنطق حرف h

٢ نهاية بعض الكلمات التي تنطق مثل حرفي (شن)

كما فى (tion) / (tian)
receptionist / Egyptian

٣ لاحظ (th) فى كلمة

theatre تنطق ث

قراءة السنوات

١ تنطق السنوات بنطق رقمين ثم رقمين

1843 → eighteen forty-three
1851 → eighteen fifty-one

٢ إذا كان الرقم الثالث صفر تنطق كمايلى:

- رقمين + حرف o + الرقم الأخير
1908 → nineteen oh eight
أو → nineteen zero eight

٣ إذا كان الرقم 1900 ينطق

1900 → nineteen hundred

٤ إذا كان الرقم بعد عام 2000

- الأرقام من 2000 حتى 2009 تنطق
- Two thousand + and + الرقم
- 2001 → Two thousand and one

٥ من 2010 وما بعدها تنطق

Twenty + الرقم
2015 → Twenty fifteen

أضف لمعلوماتك

- L.E هى اختصار لكلمة Livre Egyptianne وهى باللغة الفرنسية تعنى جنيه مصرى.
- a.m هى اختصار للكلمة اللاتينية ante meridiem وتعنى صباحًا.
- p.m هى اختصار للكلمة اللاتينية post meridiem وتعنى مساءً.



أسئلة مجمعة من اختبارات الاعوام السابقة

1 Listen and circle:

استمع وضع دائرة:

نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

1. a. Yes. We are open daily, except on holidays. b. Yes. We are open daily, except on Sundays.
2. a. Once a week. b. Once a month.
3. a. Do you like ice cream? b. Do you watch TV at night?
4. a. What did you do last week? b. What did you do yesterday?

سوهاج - إدارة طهطا 2019

2 Listen and complete:

استمع وأكمل:

نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار — المنيا - إدارة بنى مزار 2017

Noha : Is there a cinema near your house?
Heba : No, there isn't. There is a ① ....
Noha : What are its opening ② ....?
Heba : It's open daily except on ③ ....
Noha : How much does it cost for ④ .... to get in?
Heba : It's five pounds.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1- .... invented ice cream? (الاسماعيلية - إدارة الاسماعيلية 2020)

a) Why b) Where c) Who d) What

2- .... that include the Mummy rooms? (الدقهلية - إدارة دكرنس 2016)

a) Do b) Does c) Are d) Am

3- Have a .... day. (أسيوط - إدارة القوصية 2019)

a) bad b) hard c) nice d) big

4- Pupils can read books in the school .... (القاهرة - إدارة الساحل 2020)

a) cinema b) museum c) library d) hospital

5- We .... open daily. (المنيا - إدارة المنيا 2019)

a) is b) are c) do d) did

6- There .... a restaurant near my house, but now it's closed.

أسوان - إدارة أسوان 2020

a was b wasn't c were d weren't

7- Where did the first ice cream factory .... ?

القاهرة - إدارة روض الفرج 2017

a open b opened c opens d opening

8- Are you open .... Fridays?

الفيوم - إدارة ابشواى 2016

a at b on c in d with

9- Ice cream has a long ....

البحيرة - إدارة التوفيقية 2016

a history b maths c science d English

4 Read the passage and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة ثم أجب عن الأسئلة ،

الاسكندرية - إدارة الجمرك 2018

Hi! I'm Steven Conner. I own an ice cream sandwich shop. It's called Cold Sandwiches. In 1995, I bought my first ice cream churn. I made ice cream at home. Then, in 1999, I bought an ice cream shop. Ice cream shops were on every block in my town. So I decided to sell just ice cream sandwiches at my shop. The delicious taste of ice cream between two cookies is my favourite.

A- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1- He sells just ice cream ....

a cones b sticks c old d sandwiches

2- He bought his ice cream shop in ....

a 1999 b 1995 c 1996 d 1994

B- Answer the following questions:

3- Who is the owner of Cold Sandwiches?

....

4- What is Steven's favourite taste?

....





Test 1 Unit 1

1 Listen and circle:

استمع وضع دائرة:



نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

1. a. He went to the bank. b. He went to the post office.
2. a. We are open from 9:00 to 7:00. b. We are open from 7:00 to 9:00
3. a. How do you go to the hotel? b. How do you go to the bank?
4. a. Was there a bank near the school ? b. Was there a library in front of the theatre?

2 Listen and complete:

استمع وأكمل:



نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

الاسكندرية - إدارة العجمى 2018

Adel : Did you visit the museum?

Hani : Yes, I ❶ ....

Adel : How did you ❷ .... there?

Hani : I took the underground.

Adel : Did you go with your ❸ ....?

Hani : No, I went with my friend Sami.

Adel : What did you see there?

Hani : I ❹ .... the Mummy room.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1- Was there a hotel near the hospital? - No, there ....

ⓐ aren't ⓑ isn't ⓒ wasn't ⓓ weren't

2- A: .... there a bank across from the post office? B: Yes, there was.

ⓐ Were ⓑ Was ⓒ Is ⓓ Are

3- .... are your hours? القاهرة - إدارة الساحل 2019

ⓐ Who ⓑ What ⓒ How ⓓ Why

4- Children under five are ....They don't pay money.

ⓐ cost ⓑ fine ⓒ food ⓓ free

5- There .... a hotel next to the bank. بني سويف - إدارة سمسطا 2019

a were b are c did d was

6- Ice cream is now one of America's favourite .... المنوفية - إدارة تلا 2019

a deserts b games c desserts d dresses

7- We are open .... except on holidays. كفر الشيخ - إدارة الحامول 2016

a day b week c daily d month

8- Ice cream has a / an .... history. البحيرة - إدارة التحرير 2018

a long b rare c hungry d expensive

4 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one:

ضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة واستبدلها بكلمة مناسبة :

					Answer
1	got	slept	invent	bought	....
2	beside	hotel	above	behind	....
3	play	bridge	bank	school	....
4	Tuesday	March	Monday	Friday	....
5	ice cream	chocolate	pickle	hour	....

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة ثم أجب عن الأسئلة :

الجيزة - إدارة امبابة 2018

We don't know who invented ice cream, but ice cream has a long history in the United States. In 1843, Nancy Johnson invented the first ice cream churn. The first ice cream factory opened in Baltimore in 1851. A man in St. Louis made the first ice cream cone in 1896. Ice cream is now one of America's favourite desserts. The first ice cream shop opened in New York in 1876.

A- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1- Ice cream has a long history in ....

a Egypt b Sudan c France d the United States

2- Ice cream is now one of America's favourite ....

a desert b desserts c daily d desk

B- Answer the following questions:

3- When did the first ice cream shop open? ....

4- Who invented the first ice cream churn? ....

6 Write an email of SEVEN (7) sentences: أكتب ايميل من سبعة (٧) جمل :

الغربية - إدارة شرق المحلة 2020

To your friend Ahmed. Tell him about your visit to the Egyptian Museum. Your name is Ayman and your email address is ayman@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is ahmed@yahoo.com.

New Message

Cc Bcc

To ....

From ....

Subject ....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات الآتية لتكون جملاً صحيحة :

1- pounds - twenty - It's - foreigners - for. (الفيوم - إدارة أبشواي 2018)

....

2- Is - beside - house - there - a bank - your ? (دمياط - إدارة كفر البطيخ 2015)

....

8 Punctuate the following sentences: ضع علامات ترقيم للجمل الآتية :

1- amany doesn't go to school on Friday (الغربية - إدارة طنطا 2019)

....

2- Do Rania and sama like ice cream

....



Unit 1 Listening materials

Exercises Lesson 1



1 Listen and circle:

1- How much does it cost for children? - It costs five pounds.
2- What are your hours? - We're open from 9:00 to 7:00.
3- Where's the Egyptian Museum? - In Cairo.
4- How do you spend your weekend? - I spend it at the Egyptian Museum.

2 Listen and complete:

A : Is it the Egyptian Museum?
B : Yes, it **is**.
A : **When** are you open?
B : We are open **daily**.
A : How much does it **cost** to get in?
B : It's two pounds for Egyptians.

Exercises Lesson 2




1 Listen and circle:

1- Where did he go? - He went to the hotel.
2- Where was she last week? - She was at the library.
3- Can we see the show? - Sure.
4- How much does it cost for adults? - Three pounds.

Exercises Lesson 3



1 Listen and circle:

1- Was there a bridge near the library? - Yes, there was.
2- What was there behind the school? - A hotel.
3- Was there a bridge above the river? - No, there wasn't.
4- Was there a theatre above the bank? - Yes, there was.

2 Listen and complete:

Samir : Where is the school, please?
Teacher : It's **beside** the bank.
Samir : Where's the post **office**?
Teacher : It's **across** from the hotel.
Samir : Is it in **front** of the park?
Teacher : Yes, it is.
Samir : Thanks a lot.







Lesson 4

1 Listen and circle:

1- What's your favourite flavour? - Vanilla.

2- When did the first ice cream factory open? - In 1876.

3- Who invented ice cream? - We don't know.

4- How much is chocolate ice cream? - Four pounds.

2 Listen and complete:

Reham: Hello, Hoda. What are you doing?

Hoda : I'm buying an ice **cream**.

Reham: What's your favourite **flavour**?

Hoda : It's **chocolate**.

Reham: Can you buy me one with a **vanilla** flavour?

Hoda : Yes, of course.



أسئلة مجمعة من اختبارات الاعوام السابقة

1 Listen and circle:

1- Are you open on Friday? - Yes. We are open daily except on holidays.

2- How often do you go to the museum? - Once a week.

3- Do you like ice cream? - Yes, I do.

4- What did you do yesterday? - I baked bread.

2 Listen and complete:

Noha : Is there a cinema near your house?

Heba : No, there isn't. There is a **theatre**.

Noha : What are its opening **hours**?

Heba : It's open daily except on **Fridays**.

Noha : How much does it cost for **adults** to get in?

Heba : It's five pounds.

Test 1 Unit 1

1 Listen and circle:

1- Where did he go? - He went to the post office.

2- What are your hours? - We are open from 7:00 to 9:00.

3- How do you go to the bank? - By bus.

4- Was there a library near the school? - No. there wasn't.

2 Listen and complete:

Adel : Did you visit the museum?

Hani : Yes, I **did**.

Adel : How did you **go** there?

Hani : I took the underground.

Adel : Did you go with your **family**?

Hani : No, I went with my friend Sami.

Adel : What did you see there?

Hani : I **saw** the Mummy room.



Aims of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

Conversation Time Lesson 1 - SB: P. 7 /WB:P. 7

- order food in a restaurant
- طلب الطعام فى المطعم
- express quantities of food & drink
- التعبير عن كميات الطعام والشراب
- identify speakers in a conversation
- التعرف على متحدثين في المحادثة

Word Time Lesson 2 - SB: P.8 /WB:P. 8

- know vocabularies about foods and drinks
- معرفة مفردات عن الأطعمة والمشروبات

Focus Time & Practice Time Lesson 3 - SB: P. 9-10/WB:P. 9-10

- use food quantities
- استخدام كميات الطعام
- use Wh-questions with how much / many?
- استخدام الاسئلة بـ (-Wh) مع كم للكمية؟ / كم للعدد؟

Reading Time & Your Time Lesson 4 - SB: P. 11-12 /WB:P. 11-12

- read a restaurant review
- قراءة مقالة عن المطعم



Lesson 1

Conversation Time

وقت المحادثة

SB Page: 7 • WB Page: 7



Food طعام

أصناف الطعام			
steak	شريحة لحم (استيك)	rice	أرز
baked potato	بطاطس في الفرن	sandwich	ساندويتش
salad	سلطة	**طرق طهى (تسوية) الطعام**	
spaghetti	مكرونة اسباجتى	rare	ناقص الطهى
meatballs	كرات اللحم	medium	متوسط الطهى
soup	شوربة	well done	جيد الطهى

Adjectives صفات

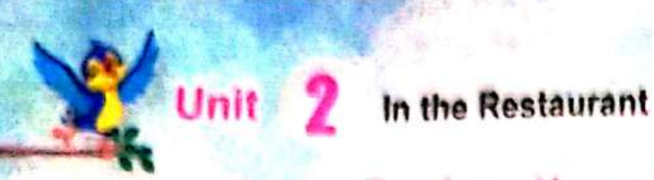
*delicious	لذيذ / شهى	*sure	متأكد
ready	جاهز / مستعد	good	جيد

Other words كلمات أخرى

menu	قائمة طعام	waitress	جرسونة
maybe	ربما	waiter	جرسون
*today's special	طبق اليوم	How about?	ماذا عن؟

Expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر

sounds good	يبدو جيدًا	I think so.	أعتقد ذلك .
in the mood for	أشعر برغبة فى / ميال لـ	Here you are.	تفضل .
ready to	مستعد لـ	looks delicious	تبدو لذيذة



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضي
order	يأمر / يطلب	ordered
cook	يطهو - يطبخ	cooked
want	يريد	wanted
look	يبدو / ينظر	looked

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

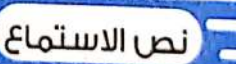
Present مضارع		Past ماضي
think	يعتقد	thought
have / has	يتناول / يملك	had
eat	يأكل	ate



Read and learn اقرأ وتعلم

Are you ready to order?	هل أنت جاهز لطلب الطعام؟
I think so. I'll have a steak.	اعتقد ذلك . سوف أتناول شريحة لحم بقرى (استيك).
Rare, medium or well done?	ناقص أم متوسط أم جيد الطهى؟
How about a salad?	ما رأيك فى طبق سلطة؟
What's today's special?	ما هو طبق اليوم؟
Spaghetti and meatballs.	مكرونة اسباجتى وكرات اللحم.
I'm in the mood for spaghetti.	أنا أميل إلى/أشعر برغبة فى تناول مكرونة اسباجتى.
It looks delicious.	تبدو لذيذة.



Tapescript 

A Listen and repeat. Point to the speakers. Then listen again.

استمع وردد. قم بالإشارة إلى المتحدثين ثم استمع مرة أخرى.

1

Waitress : Hello. Are you ready to order?

Woman : I think so. I'll have a steak.



2

Waitress : Rare, medium, or well done?

Woman : Medium, please. And a baked potato.



3

Waitress : How about a salad?

Woman : Sounds good.



4

Man : What's today's special?

Waitress : Spaghetti and meatballs.



5

Man : Good! I'm in the mood for spaghetti. I'll have that.



6

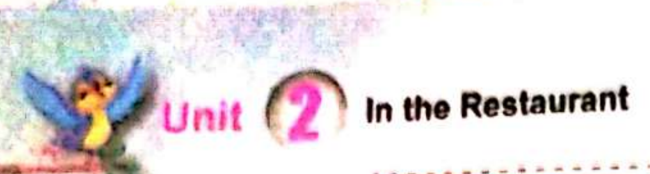
Waitress : Here you are.

Man : Thanks. It looks delicious.



B Role-play the conversation:

يقوم التلاميذ بتمثيل المحادثة معاً .



Language Notes ملاحظات لغوية

1 look / sound (يبدو) + adjective صفة

- The cake looks delicious. يبدو الكيك لذيذ.
- Sounds good. Let's eat some. يبدو جيدا . هيا نأكل بعض منه.

2 ready to (مستعد لـ / جاهز لـ) + inf. مصدر الفعل

- Are you ready to order? هل أنت مستعد لطلب ما تريد؟

3 have = يتناول

- eat يأكل + نوع من الأطعمة
- drink يشرب + نوع من المشروبات

- I'll have meat. سوف أتناول اللحم.
- I'll have a cup of tea. سوف أشرب فنجان من الشاى.

4 today's special طبق اليوم

- Baked potato is today's special. طبق اليوم هو بطاطس فى الفرن.

Language Functions وظائف لغوية

1 Offering help in the restaurant : • تقديم المساعدة فى المطعم :

Waitress : Are you ready to order? هل أنت مستعد لطلب الطعام؟

Ahmed : I think so. I'll have a steak. أعتقد ذلك . سآخذ استيك/ شريحة لحم.

2 Making suggestions : • تقديم اقتراحات:

A : How about a salad? ما رأيك فى طبق سلطة؟

B : Sounds good. يبدو ذلك جيدًا.

3 Asking for information: • طلب معلومات :

A : What's today's special? ما هو طبق اليوم؟

B : Spaghetti and meatballs. اسباجتى وكرات اللحم.

4 Expressing likes: • التعبير عما نحب:

Good! I'm in the mood for spaghetti. أشعر برغبة فى تناول مكرونة اسباجتى.

Lesson ① EXERCISES

تدريبات

Lesson 1

1 Listen and circle:



نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

1. a. A salad and a steak. b. Spaghetti and meatballs.
2. a. I think so. I'll have a steak. b. I'll have spaghetti.
3. a. What's your favourite food? b. What will you have today? (2018 بورسعيد - إدارة بورسعيد)
4. a. Are you ready to order? b. Do you want anything to eat? (2019 الجيزة - إدارة أبو النمرس)

2 Listen and complete:



نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار — الدقهلية - إدارة شرق المنصورة 2020

Waiter : Hello. Are you ready to order?

Hany : I think ❶ .... I'll have fish.

Waiter : How ❷ ....meatballs?

Hany : Sounds ❸ .... What's today's special?

Waiter : Chicken and spaghetti.

Hany : Good! I'm in the ❹ ....for spaghetti.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- I like this food. It's ....

ⓐ salty ⓑ cold ⓒ bad ⓓ delicious

2- To get steak ...., cook it for a short time.

ⓐ old ⓑ new ⓒ rare ⓓ well done

3- A .... is a kind of meat. (2015 الأقصر - إدارة)

ⓐ salad ⓑ spaghetti ⓒ steak ⓓ cake

4- It .... delicious. (2016 القاهرة - إدارة)

ⓐ looks ⓑ look ⓒ looking ⓓ to look

5- I'll have a .... potato.

ⓐ baker ⓑ bakes ⓒ baked ⓓ bake

6- I'm in the .... for spaghetti. I'll have that. (2018 القاهرة - إدارة)

ⓐ mood ⓑ book ⓒ moon ⓓ look

7- I will .... a steak.

ⓐ drink ⓑ write ⓒ have ⓓ watch

8- What's today's .... ?

ⓐ colour ⓑ time ⓒ special ⓓ museum

4 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one:

				Answer
1 have	eat	mood	think	....
2 under	on	in	and	....
3 ready	shop	restaurant	museum	....
4 juice	tea	chicken	lemonade	....
5 steak	chicken	water	bread	....

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

2019 بنى سويف- الفشن

Last week, my friend Ahmed and I walked to a restaurant. The restaurant was clean and the prices were good. When we reached there, the waiter came and asked what we wanted to eat and drink. Ahmed ordered fish and rice. I ordered spaghetti and meatballs. Then, we asked the waiter to bring us orange juice. We returned home at five o'clock.

A- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- The restaurant was ....

a dirty b busy c clean d small

2- They went to the restaurant ....

a on foot b by car c by train d by bus

B- Answer the following questions:

3- When did they go to the restaurant?

....

4- What did they drink?

....

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1- medium - have - I - a - will - steak. 2018 القليوبية - إدارة العبور

....

2- am - mood - for - in - I - the - spaghetti. 2020 الغربية- إدارة شرق طنطا

....

3- today's - What's - special? 2018 بورسعيد - إدارة بورسعيد

....

4- ready - to - you - Are - order? 2015 الاسماعيلية - إدارة القصاصين

....

7 Punctuate the following:

1- i'll have a steak, please ....

2- What's today s special ....



Lesson 2

Word Time

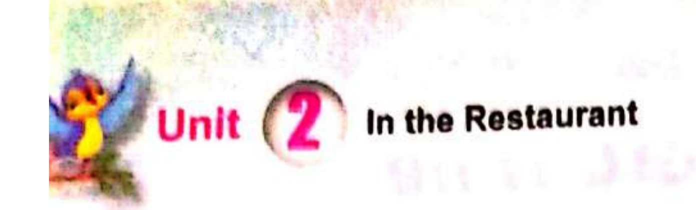
وقت الكلمات

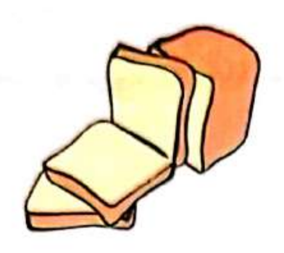
SB Page: 8 • WB Page: 8



Vocabulary مفردات

water مياه	LEMONADE lemonade* عصير ليمون
roast beef لحم بقرى مشوى	roast turkey ديك رومى مشوى
chicken soup شوربة دجاج	fruit salad سلطة فواكه
orange juice عصير برتقال	coffee قهوة

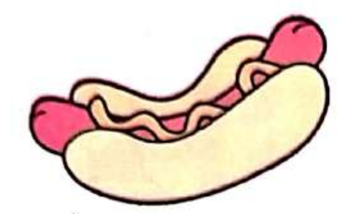




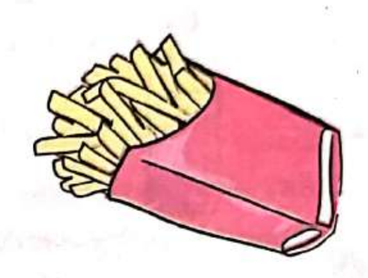
bread خبز



apple pie فطيرة تفاح



hot dog ساندويتش سجق



French fries بطاطس (مقلية)

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
rent	يُؤجِّر	rented
watch	يشاهد	watched
want	يريد	wanted

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
drink	يشرب	drank
bring	يحضر	brought
eat	يأكل	ate

Other words كلمات أخرى

tonight	الليلة
video	شريط فيديو
family	أسرة / عائلة
outside	بالخارج
film	فيلم
tomorrow	غداً



(A) Listen and repeat:

استمع وردد:

يستمع التلاميذ إلى الكلمات الآتية ويرددونها ثم يقومون بالإشارة إلى الصورة المعبرة عن كل كلمة.

1. water
2. lemonade
3. roast beef
4. roast turkey
5. chicken soup
6. fruit salad
7. orange juice
8. coffee
9. bread
10. apple pie

(B) Point and say the words:

أشر إلى الصور السابقة وقل الكلمات:





C Listen and point.

استمع وأشر :

- Roast beef.
- Bread.
- Coffee.
- Chicken soup.
- Lemonade.
- Water.
- Fruit salad.
- Apple pie.
- Orange juice.
- Roast turkey.

• Now listen and point to the speakers.

• انظر إلى الصورة السابقة وأشر إلى المتحدثين .

1

A : What are you going to have?

B : I don't know.

A : I'm going to have some French fries and a hot dog.

B : That sounds good. I'll have that, too.

2

A : I rented a video. Do you want to watch it tonight?

B : I can't. I'm going to see a film with my family. How about tomorrow?

A : Sure!

3

A : Here you are.

B : Thanks. It looks delicious.

A : How about some more water?

B : No, thanks.

Answers

1- boy and girl — ولد وبنت

2- Mona and Kareem — منى وكريم

3- Waiter and woman — جرسونة وسيدة

Lesson 2 EXERCISES
تدريبات

1 Listen and circle:


نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

1. a. Fish and salad. b. A steak and salad. 2018 الغربية - إدارة السنطة
2. a. I don't know. b. I'm going to have a hot dog.
3. a. What did you eat for dinner? b. What did you have for lunch?
4. a. Do you like fish? b. Do you like meat?

2 Listen and complete:


نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار المنوفية - إدارة تلا 2019

Father : What are you going to ❶ ....?
Mother : I don't know.
Father : I'm going to have some French fries and a hot dog.
Mother : That ❷ .... good. I'll have that, too.
Waiter : Here you ❸ ....
Mother : Thanks. It looks delicious.
Father : How ❹ .... some more water?
Mother : No, thanks.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- How .... some water?
a much b many c often d about

2- The roast beef .... delicious.
a has b likes c watches d looks

3- My favourite dessert is .... salad.
a vegetables b fruit c lemonade d beef

4- My mother used lemons to make some ....
a coffee b lemonade c turkey d fruit

5- I want to drink some orange ....

a week b jar c juice d phone

6- I'm going to have .... for my dessert.

a bread b chicken c an apple pie d roast beef

7- He .... going to have some coffee.

a are b is c has d does

8- Do you want to .... the film tonight?

a watch b watches c watching d watched

4 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one:

					Answer
1	drank	brought	ate	apple	....
2	roast beef	coffee	turkey	fruit salad	....
3	car	bread	meat	steak	....
4	delicious	good	restaurant	nice	....
5	lemonade	juice	milk	video	....

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

Last Monday, I went to a restaurant with my friend Ali. We went there by taxi. The waiter asked us what we wanted to eat and drink. Ali ordered chicken, soup and spaghetti. I ordered fish and rice. Then we asked the waiter to bring us orange juice. We returned home at five o'clock.

A- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1- We went to the restaurant ....

a yesterday b last Sunday c last Monday d tomorrow

2- I ordered ....

a fruit salad b fish and rice c chicken d orange juice

B- Answer the following questions:

3- Where did they go last Monday?

....

4- What did Ali order?

....

6 Write an email of SEVEN (7) sentences:

Write an email to your friend Hani to tell him about the lunch you had at a restaurant. Your name is Rami and your email address is rami25@yahoo.com and your friend's email address is hani87@hotmail.com.

New Message

To ....

From ....

Subject ....

Cc **Bcc**

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1- order - fries - they - French - Did?

....

2- three - I - pieces - of - meat - had. بنى سويف - إدارة الفشن 2018

....

3- of - six - had - He - loaves - bread. الاسكندرية - إدارة سيدي بشر 2018

....

4- like - lemonade - you - Do? كفر الشيخ - إدارة الرياض 2018

....

5- did - you - What - yesterday - eat?

....



Lesson 3 Focus Time Practice Time وقت التدريب

SB Pages: 9 - 10 • WB Pages: 9 - 10

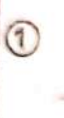
Food Quantities كميات الطعام

(A) Listen and repeat:

استمع وردد :

• لتحديد الكمية التى نريدها من أطعمة (لاتعد) نستخدم ألفاظ التجزئة (الحاويات) لإمكانية عدها مثل:





① 

a bottle of water زجاجة ماء

② 

a can of lemonade علبة عصير ليمون



③ 

a slice of turkey شريحة ديك رومى

④ 

a piece of apple pie قطعة فطيرة تفاح



⑤ 

a bowl of chicken soup سلطانية شوربة دجاج

⑥ 

a glass of orange juice كوب عصير برتقال



⑦ 

a cup of coffee فنجان قهوة

⑧ 

a loaf of bread رغيف خبز

(B) Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد :

A: How much water did she have? B: She had one bottle of water.

A: How many bottles of water did she have? B: She had three bottles of water.



C Look at page 8. Listen and point:

• انظر إلى الصورة في صفحة ٨ بكتاب المدرسة ثم اشر إلى ما تسمعه.

A: How many slices of roast beef did she have?
B: She had two slices of roast beef.
A: How much lemonade did she have?
B: She had one can of lemonade.
A: How many slices of roast turkey did he have?
B: He had four slices of roast turkey.



Countable & Uncountable nouns

• تنقسم الأسماء إلى:

Countable nouns	أسماء يمكن عدها
Uncountable nouns	أسماء لا يمكن عدها

- Countable nouns:

أولا : الأسماء التي يمكن عدها :

– الأسماء التي تعد إما أن تأتي مفردة فيسبقها a / an أو تأتي جمع دون إضافة a / an

• الأسماء التي تعد أما أن تنتهي بالنهايات القادمة أو تجمع جمع شاذ.

s | es | ies | ves | جمع شاذ

– كيف نكون الجمع من الأسماء المفردة التي تعد:

١– إما بإضافة **s** آخر الاسم: book ⟶ books

٢– أو بإضافة **es** آخر الاسم إذا انتهى بالحروف الآتية ⟸ :

s, x, o, ch, ss, sh

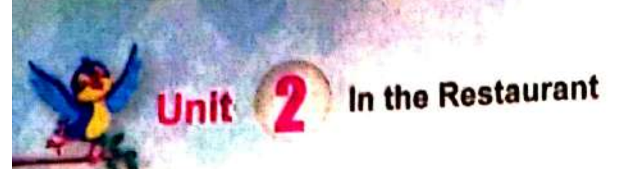
bus	⟶	buses	beach	⟶	beaches
box	⟶	boxes	glass	⟶	glasses
tomato	⟶	tomatoes	dish	⟶	dishes

٣– أو بإضافة **ies** إذا انتهى الاسم بحرف (y) وكان قبله حرف ساكن حيث يحذف (y).

– أما إذا سبق حرف (y) حرف متحرك لا يحذف.

y + حرف ساكن (candy) ⟹ ~~y~~ies candies

y + حرف متحرك (boy) ⟹ ys (boys)



٤- أو بإضافة **ves** آخر الاسم إذا انتهى بـ f / fe حيث تحذف كما يلي:

knife	→	knives	loaf	→	loaves
wife	→	wives	wolf	→	wolves

٥- وهناك أسماء شاذة لا تتبع القاعدة ولها جمع خاص بها تحفظ كما هي:

mouse	→	mice	ox	→	oxen
man	→	men	woman	→	women
child	→	children	tooth	→	teeth

How many? كم عدد؟

• للسؤال عن الأشياء التي تعد نستخدم: How many?

How many + اسم يعد (جمع) + فعل مساعد + فاعل + **inf.** مصدر الفعل **?**

How many oranges did you have?

I had three oranges. لاحظ أننا نذكر العدد في الإجابة :

• لاحظ أن الفعل **have** يعني (يأكل / يشرب / يتناول) يتحول إلى **had** في صيغة الماضي البسيط.

Uncountable nouns ثانيًا : الأسماء التى لا يمكن عدها

We can't count bread but we can count loaves of bread

How many loaves of bread ?

one loaf of bread — two loaves of bread

We can't count cheese but we can count pieces of cheese

How many pieces of cheese?

one piece of cheese — two pieces of cheese

– الأسماء التى لا تعد تكون دائما مفردة وتعد بإضافة عدد إلى الحاوية الخاصة بكل طعام كالآتي:

– لاحظ في المثال الأول أن كلمة **bread** لا تعد لكن يمكن أن تعد لو استخدمنا كلمة **loaves** بمعنى أرغفة.

– وفى المثال الثانى كلمة **cheese** لا تعد لكن يمكن أن تعد لو استخدمنا كلمة **pieces** بمعنى قطع.

– وهكذا مع باقى الأسماء التى لا تعد.



How much? كم الكمية؟

How much?

- للسؤال عن الأشياء التى لا تعد نستخدم:

How much + اسم لا يعد + فعل مساعد + فاعل + inf . مصدر الفعل ?

How much lemonade did you have? I had three cans of lemonade.

- لاحظ أننا نستخدم الحاوية أو الأجزاء التى ينقسم إليها الاسم الذى لا يعد .

لاحظ الآتى

How much + اسم لا يعد (مفرد) ?
= How many + ألفاظ التجزئة للاسم الذى لا يعد (فى حالة الجمع) ?

How much bread did you have? = How many loaves of bread did you have?
How much coffee did you have? = How many cups of coffee did you have?
ويكون لهما نفس الإجابة .

لاحظ الآتى

How much sugar did you buy?
= How many sugar bags did you buy?

– فى المثال الأول استخدم much لان السكر هنا كمية لا تعد لكن فى المثال الثانى استخدمنا many لأن أكياس السكر تعد .

– احفظ الجدول التالى لتعرف الفرق بين How much? How many? :

How much?	How many?
bread	loaves of bread
water	bottles of water
turkey	slices of turkey
lemonade	cans of lemonade
coffee	cups of coffee

- لاحظ أن الاسم الذى يأتى بعد How many يكون مضافاً له s لأنه فى صيغة الجمع .

- احفظ الحاوية الخاصة بكل طعام:

a slice of شريحة من	roast beef turkey	a bowl of سلطانية من	chicken soup fruit salad
a piece of قطعة من	apple pie cake cheese	a cup of فنجان من	tea coffee



a bottle/ a glass of زجاجة / كوب من	milk / water	a can of علبة من	lemonade
	orange juice	a loaf of رغيف من	bread

Some & any

- نستخدم كلمة **some** (بعض) في الجملة المثبتة. – يأتي بعد **some** اسم جمع أو اسم لا يعد.
- ونستخدم **any** (أي) في الجملة المنفية والسؤال. – يأتي بعد **any** اسم جمع أو اسم لا يعد.

- Did you have any cheese?
No, I didn't have any cheese. I had some fruit salad.
I don't have any pencils.

فاعل + am / is / are + going to + inf. مصدر الفعل

للتعبير عن المستقبل نستخدم (going to) بمعنى (سوف)

I	→ am	+ going to + inf. مصدر الفعل
He / She / It / اسم مفرد	→ is	
We / You / They / اسم جمع	→ are	

- I'm going to eat meat.
- She is going to drink tea.
- They are going to have roast beef.



A Listen and repeat. Then practise with a partner:

• انظر إلى الصورة وتبادل مع زميلك السؤال والإجابة تبعًا للكلمات المعطاة.

• How many...? / How much..?

A- How much bread did he have?

B- He had six loaves of bread.

1 How many pieces of apple pie did they have?

pieces of apple pie/they?
four

They had four pieces of apple pie.



2 How many bowls of chicken soup did she have?

She had one bowl of chicken soup.



3 How much lemonade did you have?

We had two cans of lemonade.

lemonade/you?
two cans



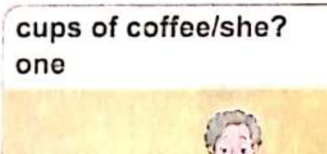
4 How much roast beef did she have?

She had two slices of roast beef.



5 How many cups of coffee did she have?

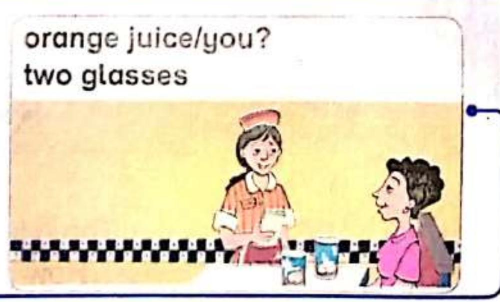
She had one cup of coffee.





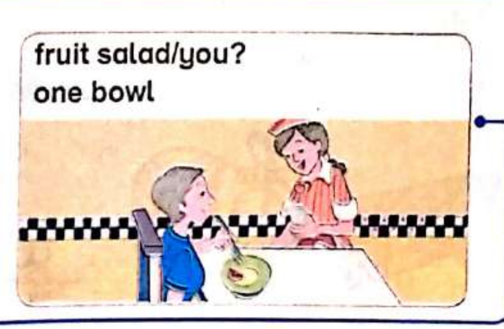
6 How much orange juice did you have?

I had two glasses of orange juice.



7 How much fruit salad did you have?

I had one bowl of fruit salad.



8 How many slices of turkey did he have?



He had four slices of turkey.

B Look at page 8. Practise with a partner.

يظهر التلاميذ إلى الصفحة (٨) بالكتاب المدرسى ثم يتدربون على المحادثة كمايلى:

S1: (pointing to the woman with coffee) — يشير الطالب الأول إلى السيدة التى لديها فنجان قهوة ويقول:

How many cups of coffee did she have? — كم فنجانا من القهوة تناولت؟

S2: She had one cup of coffee. — تناولت فنجان واحد من القهوة.

C Listen and chant:

استمع وغن:

يستمع التلاميذ إلى أغنية **(How Much ? How Many?)** ويرددونها:



How Much? How Many?



How much roast beef did you have?
I had one slice.
How many slices?
One slice. I had one slice of roast beef.
How much chicken soup did you have?
I had two bowls.
How many bowls?
Two bowls. I had two bowls of chicken soup.
How much water did you have?
I had three bottles.
How many bottles?
Three bottles. I had three bottles of water.
How much orange juice did you have?
I had four glasses.
How many glasses?
Four glasses. I had four glasses of orange juice.





Lesson (3) EXERCISES تدريبات

1 Listen and circle:

نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار



1. a. I had two glasses of orange juice. b. I had two bowls of fruit salad.

القليوبية - إدارة قليوب 2018

2. a. She's going to have an apple pie. b. She is going to have roast beef.

3. a. How much lemonade did they have? b. How much cake did they have?

القاهرة - إدارة الزيتون 2018

4. a. How many cups do you have ? b. How many glasses do you have?

الفيوم - إدارة الفيوم 2018

2 Listen and complete:



نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

Miss Fatma : Where did you go yesterday, Rawan?

Rawan : I went to a ① ....

Miss Fatma : What did you ② ....?

Rawan : I had one bowl of ③ .... salad and a cup of tea.

Miss Fatma : Did you have a ④ .... of apple pie?

Rawan : No, I didn't.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- They had two glasses of ....

ⓐ lemonade ⓑ turkey ⓒ bread ⓓ meat

2- How .... glasses of orange juice did she have? اسيوط - إدارة أسيوط 2018

ⓐ old ⓑ many ⓒ often ⓓ much

3- I will take a .... of roast turkey.

ⓐ cup ⓑ glass ⓒ slice ⓓ can

4- How .... bottles of water did she have? كفر الشيخ - إدارة الحامول 2018

ⓐ much ⓑ an ⓒ a ⓓ many

5- How .... bread did he have? 2018 القاهرة - إدارة المرج

a old b many c much d often

6- We don't have .... chicken soup.

a a b an c some d any

7- I had one .... of bread.

a cup b bottle c glass d loaf

8- How .... roast turkey did she have?

a many b much c about d long

9- How .... slices of turkey did she have? 2016 دمياط - إدارة بلطيم

a many b much c often d long

10- How .... juice do you have?

a many b often c much d long

4 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one:

					Answer
1	had	glass	bottle	bowl	....
2	lemonade	coffee	water	bread	....
3	Wael	Samir	Amira	Kareem	....
4	want	much	eat	have	....
5	turkey	pie	cup	chicken	....

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

2015 الغربية - إدارة المحلة الكبرى

Last Friday, Sameh had dinner at the club with his family. It was his father's birthday. His father is 60 years old. Sameh's mother is two years younger than his father. Sameh ate a piece of apple pie. Sameh's father and mother ordered three pieces of roast turkey each. Sameh and his parents spent a good time at the club.

A- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1- Sameh had .... at the club.

a lunch b snack c breakfast d dinner

2- Sameh's mother is .... years old.

a sixty-two b sixty c fifty-eight d forty

B- Answer the following questions:

3- What did Sameh's parents order?

....

4- Who ate a piece of apple pie?

....

6 Write a paragraph of SEVEN (7) sentences:

"A big meal"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1- How many - Nada - coffee - have - did - cups - of?

....

2- three - had - She - slices - roast beef - of. — أسيوط - إدارة الغنايم 2015

....

3- at - Who - free - restaurants - eats?

....

4- lemonade - two - of - He - cans - had.

....

5- a restaurant - can - meals - at - We - have. — كفر الشيخ - إدارة دسوق 2018

....

6- you - soup - much - have - How - did? — القليوبية - إدارة قها 2018

....

8 Punctuate the following:

1- They re going to have roast beef on monday.

....

2- What s Mona going to have — الغربية - إدارة بسيون 2018

....



Lesson 4

Reading Time Your Time وقت القراءة

SB Pages: 11 - 12 • WB Pages: 11 - 12



Vocabulary مفردات

New Words كلمات جديدة

new	جديد	Italian	إيطالي
downtown	وسط المدينة	owner	مالك / صاحب الشيء
the best	الأفضل	*chef	رئيس الطهاة (شيف)
A.M.	صباحًا	price	ثمن - سعر
P.M.	مساءً	serve	يقدم طعام

Adjectives صفات

free	مجاني	clean	نظيف
good	جيد	open	مفتوح
*real	حقيقي		

People أشخاص

grandpa = grandfather	جد	friend	صديق
sister	أخت	kids = children	أطفال

Time الوقت

last Saturday	السبت الماضي	Friday	الجمعة
Wednesday	الأربعاء	tomorrow	غدًا
May	شهر مايو		

Places أماكن

restaurant	مطعم	town	مدينة
street	شارع	address	عنوان
Cairo	القاهرة	bakery	مخبز

Food طعام

meatballs	كرات اللحم	*pizza	بيتزا
pasta	مكرونة		

Meals وجبات

breakfast	وجبة الإفطار	lunch	وجبة الغداء
dinner	وجبة العشاء		



Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past ماضٍ
open	يفتح	opened
serve	يقدم طعامًا (يخدم)	served
own	يمتلك	owned

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past ماضٍ
bring	يحضر	brought
say	يقول	said

Read and learn



اقرأ وتعلم

- Grandpa Ali's is a new Italian restaurant in downtown Cairo.
  مطعم الجد "على" هو مطعم إيطالى جديد فى وسط المدينة فى القاهرة.
- The real Grandpa Ali is the owner's grandfather and the chef at the restaurant.
  الجد الفعلى "على" هو جد المالك ورئيس الطهاه فى المطعم.
- Kids under five eat free.
  الأطفال أقل من سن الخامسة يأكلون مجانا.
- Grandpa Ali's is clean and the prices are good.
  مطعم الجد "على" نظيف والأسعار جيدة.
- They serve lunch and dinner.
  يقدمون طعام الغداء والعشاء.



A Listen and read along: استمع واقرأ:

Grandpa Ali's Restaurant Opens

Grandpa Ali's Restaurant opens

by Adel Ibrahim

Grandpa Ali's is a new Italian restaurant in downtown Cairo. It opened on May 5th. Who is Grandpa Ali? Is he the owner? No! The real Grandpa Ali is the owner's grandfather and the chef at the restaurant.

Last Saturday, Laila Abdo and her friend Diana Smith had lunch at Grandpa Ali's. "Their pizza is the best pizza in town," Laila said.

Diana said, "I'm going to bring my children here. Kids under five eat free!" Grandpa Ali's is clean and the prices are good. The address is 12 Al Ahram Street.

They're open daily from 11:00 A.M. to 10:00 P.M. They serve lunch and dinner.

New Words

new	Italian
downtown	owner
real	chef
best	price
A.M/P.M.	serve

B Listen and circle (True) or (False):

		True	False
1	Grandpa Ali's is a bakery.		
2	Laila Abdo said, "Their pasta is the best pasta in town."		
3	Kids under five eat free.		
4	Grandpa Ali's serves breakfast and lunch.		

C Read the question. Write the answer:

اقرأ السؤال واكتب الإجابة:

1- What is the name of the restaurant?
The name of the restaurant is Grandpa Ali's.

2- Where is Grandpa Ali's?
....

3- Who is Grandpa Ali's?
....

4- When is Grandpa Ali's open?
....

Workbook

A Read:

Big Mama's Restaurant Opens

Big Mama's is a new Italian restaurant in Cairo. It opened on Wednesday. Who is Big Mama? Big Mama is the owner. She's the chef, too! On Friday, Tom and his friend Ramy ate dinner at Big Mama's. Tom said, "Big Mama's meatballs are the best meatballs in town." Ramy said, "I'm going to bring my sister here tomorrow. Kids under six eat free!"

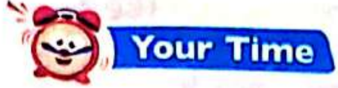
B Read the question. Write the answer:

1- Who is the chef at Big Mama's?
....

2- When did Big Mama's open?
....

3- Who eats free at Big Mama's?
....





A Listen and answer the questions : استمع واجب عن اسئلة (عن نفسك)

1- How many glasses of orange juice can you drink?

....

2- How many slices of roast beef can you eat?

....

3- How much lemonade can you drink?

....

4- How much fruit salad can you eat?

....

B Ask your classmates. Write their names and circle Yes or No.

اسأل زملائك فى الفصل ثم اكتب اسماؤهم ثم ضع دائرة حول Yes / No:

Do you want a slice of roast beef for dinner?

Food	Name	Yes / No
1- a slice of roast beef		Yes No
2- a bowl of fruit salad		Yes No
3- a piece of apple pie		Yes No
4- a bowl of soup		Yes No

C Review. Read and write the answers: راجع واقرأ ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

1- Did you have a piece of apple pie for breakfast today?

....

2- Do you like bread?

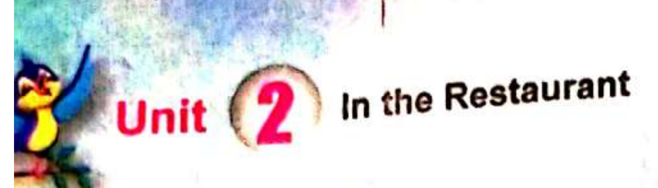
....

3- What's your favourite food?

....

4- Did you have a glass of milk this morning?

....





1 نستخدم حرف الجر **on** مع الأيام ونستخدم **in** مع الشهور:

- I met Ahmed on May 5th.
- He was born in October.

2 لاحظ الكلمات التى تبدأ بحروف كبيرة **capital letters** بهذا الدرس وهى:

Cairo المدن / Friday / May أيام الاسبوع والشهور

Italian الجنسيات / Grandpa Ali's أسماء المطاعم أو الأماكن المشهور

3 نستخدم (’s) للتعبير عن الملكية كما يلى: المالك + (’s) + الشىء المملوك

- This is Grandpa Ali's restaurant.
- This is Mona's pen.

4 **serve (food - drink)** يقدم (طعامًا أو شرابًا)

- This is a restaurant that serves breakfast and dinner.

5 تستخدم كلمة **(under)** بمعنى تحت أو أقل من :

- Children under ten eat free.

Lesson (4) EXERCISES تدريبات

(1) Listen and circle:



نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

1. a. Dinner and fruit salad. b. Lunch and drinks.
2. a. In Giza. b. In Cairo.
3. a. Who is the chef at this restaurant? b. Who is the owner of this restaurant?
4. a. What do you want to have? b. What do you want to eat?

(2) Listen and complete:



نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

Retaj : Where are you going, Marwa?

Marwa : I'm going to my grandfather's (1) ....

Retaj : (2) .... is it?

Marwa : It's in (3) ....

Retaj : What will you (4) .... there?

Marwa : Pizza and juice.

(3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- My uncle's restaurant is .... It's not dirty. (مرسي مطروح - إدارة سيوة 2019)

a) bad b) cold c) happy d) clean

2- The book costs two pounds. The .... is two pounds.

a) present b) price c) food d) prize

3- This is my father's restaurant. He is the ....

a) nurse b) teacher c) owner d) Italian

4- Kids .... five eat free.

a) on b) with c) under d) in

5- This shop opens .... (المنوفية - إدارة منوف 2018)

a) well b) daily c) best d) real

6- This restaurant .... breakfast and dinner.

a) invites b) eats c) opens d) serves

7- We .... lunch at Grandpa Ali's restaurant every day.

a drink b have c rent d do

البحيرة - إدارة مركز بدر 2018

8- He is the .... of the restaurant

a doctor b teacher c vet d chef

4 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one:

				Answer
1 restaurant	library	theatre	month	....
2 pizza	museum	steak	meatballs	....
3 pie	cup	glass	bottle	....
4 eat	serve	have	chef	....
5 bowl	slice	coffee	cup	....

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

الغربية - إدارة طنطا 2018

My uncle Ibrahim owns a restaurant. This restaurant is new. The restaurant is in Belqas. It is clean. It serves pizza and drinks. The prices are good. Yesterday, Mr Ali the teacher and his friends went to the restaurant. The restaurant is next to their houses. They had lunch there. They ordered pizza and orange juice. The pizza and the juice were delicious.

A- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1- My uncle Ibrahim is the .... of the restaurant.

a chef b owner c winner d waiter

2- Mr Ali and his friends went to the restaurant ....

a on foot b by bus c by metro d by train

B- Answer the following questions:

3- Why did they go to the restaurant?

....

4- How are the prices in the restaurant?

....

6 Write an email of SEVEN (7) sentences:

Write an email to your friend Kareem telling him about your favourite food. Your name is Sameh and your email address is sameh37@yahoo.com and your friend's email address is kareem45@hotmail.com.

New Message

To .... Cc Bcc

From ....

Subject ....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1- Grandpa - Ali's - a good - is - restaurant.

....

2- Mama's - on - opened - Big - Wednesday - restaurant.

....

3- a pizza - Is - in - there - restaurant - Cairo?

....

4- serve - does - What - this - restaurant ?

....

8 Punctuate the following:

1- Did Manar and hatim have a piece of cake (كفر الشيخ - إدارة سيدى سالم 2016)

....

2- There's an italian restaurant near the school (المنيا - إدارة العدوة 2015)

....







Food and drinks اطعمة ومشروبات

steak	شريحة لحم	roast beef	لحم بقرى مشوى
baked potato	بطاطس فى الفرن	chicken soup	شوربة دجاج
salad	سلطة	orange juice	عصير برتقال
spaghetti	مكرونة اسباجتى	bread	خبز
meatballs	كرات اللحم	lemonade	عصير ليمون
soup	شوربة	roast turkey	ديك رومى مشوى
rice	أرز	fruit salad	سلطة فواكه
sandwich	ساندويتش	coffee	قهوة
pizza	بيتزا	apple pie	فطيرة تفاح
water	مياه	pasta	مكرونة

Cooking food طرق تسوية الطعام

rare	ناقص الطهى	well done	جيد الطهى
medium	متوسط الطهى		

Adjectives صفات

delicious	شهى / لذيذ	free	مجانى
ready	جاهز	clean	نظيف
good	جيد	open	مفتوح
the best	الأفضل	real	حقيقى

Other words كلمات أخرى

downtown	وسط المدينة	menu	قائمة طعام
under	أقل من	today's special	طبق اليوم
daily	يوميًا	chef	كبير الطهاة (شيف)
owner	مالك / صاحب الشيء	video	شريط فيديو

Conjugation of verbs
تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past ماضي
order	يأمر	ordered
cook	يطهو – يطبخ	cooked
rent	يُؤجر	rented
own	يمتلك	owned
serve	يقدم (طعام)	served

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past ماضي
think	يعتقد	thought
eat	يأكل	ate
drink	يشرب	drank
bring	يحضر	brought



Grammar قواعد لغوية

Countable & Uncountable nouns الأسماء التى تعد والتى لا تعد

Countable nouns اسماء تعد	Uncountable nouns أسماء لا تعد
• تأتى إما مفردة أو جمع	• دائمًا مفردة
• تجمع بإضافة s / es / ies / ves pen → pens / glass → glasses candy → candies / loaf → loaves	• تجمع بإضافة ألفاظ التجزئة a can of / a piece of/ a cup of
• نسأل عنها باستخدام How many? How many loaves of bread did he have? He had two loaves of bread.	• نسأل عنها باستخدام How much? How much bread did he have? He had two loaves of bread.

• راجع ألفاظ التجزئة والحاويات:

a can of علبة من	a glass of كوب من	a bottle of زجاجة من
a piece of قطعة من	a cup of فنجان من	a loaf of رغيف من
a bowl of سلطانية من	a slice of شريحة من	



1 Write a paragraph of SEVEN (7) sentences:

"My father is a chef"

A My father is a chef. His pizza is the best pizza in town. He serves lunch. Kids under five eat free. My father's restaurant is clean. I like eating in it. The prices are good.

"A meal at a restaurant"

B Last Saturday. I had lunch at a restaurant. My father ordered a steak. My mother ordered meatballs. My sister had an apple pie. I had spaghetti and meatballs. The food was delicious. The restaurant was very good.

2 Write an email to your friend Fatma to tell her about the lunch you had at the restaurant. Your name is Hoda and your email address is hoda23@yahoo.com and your friend's email address is fatma54@hotmail.com.

New Message

To	fatma54@hotmail.com	Cc Bcc
From	hoda23@yahoo.com	
Subject	The lunch I had yesterday	

Dear Fatma,

How are you? I miss you so much. I had my lunch at a good restaurant yesterday. I went with my little brother. I ordered a steak and spaghetti. My brother ate free. He is under five. Kids under five eat free. The food was delicious. See you soon.

Yours,

Hoda

3 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

◀ تابع الارشادات لحل سؤال الترتيب:

١ إذا جاء السؤال بدون خط تحت الكلمة التي سنبدأ بها:

– نبحث عن فاعل الجملة ويكون الترتيب كما يلي:

مكان / صفة / مفعول ③ + فعل ② + فاعل ①

1- to - went - Ahmed - restaurant - the.

- Ahmed went to the restaurant.

٢ أيام الأسبوع وشهور السنة والأماكن تأتي غالباً آخر الجملة بحيث نضع (on) قبل أيام الأسبوع و (in) قبل شهور السنة وقبل الاماكن نضع (at أو in)

1- football - on - He - Monday - played.

- He played football on Monday.

2- in - Is - birthday - June - your?

- Is your birthday in June?

3- farm - was - the - on - Hanaa.

- Hanaa was on the farm.



٣ تعبيرات يمكن أن تأتي أول الجملة أو آخرها:

Last Sunday / In the morning / Next week

1- Last - had - at - home - Sunday, - lunch - she.

- Last Sunday, she had lunch at home.

•Exercises:

1- sugar - How - do - have - you - much?

....

2- lemonade - two - of - He - cans - had.

....

3- like - chicken - very - I - much - soup.

....

4- am - mood - for - in - I - the - spaghetti.

....

إرشادات لنطق بعض الكلمات

١ لاحظ نطق حرفى (ci) فى الكلمتين
delicious / special
حيث ينطقا مثل حرف "ش"
لاحظ أن حرف "s" فى كلمة "sure" ينطق مثل حرف "ش"

٢ ينطق حرفى (ch) مثل "تش" لكن فى كلمة
chef ينطقا مثل حرف الـ "ش" فى اللغة العربية

٣ تنطق كلمة pie مثل كلمة buy
مع اختلاف صوتى b و p

٤ تنطق كلمة(bowl)
مثل كلمتى goal / hole مع اختلاف أول صوت فقط

٥ لاحظ فى كلمة turkey
ينطق حرفى ur مثل حرفى ir فى كلمة girl.

٦ لنطق كلمة lemonade نقسم الكلمة إلى جزئين:
أولاً: lemo حيث لاينطق حرف o
short لكن ينطق مثل حرف o فى كلمة second
ثانياً: nade حيث ينطق مثل كلمة made
مع اختلاف أول حرف

٧ نطق كلمة real
لنطق كلمة real بشكل صحيح تنطق حرفى "ea" كما فى كلمة hear

٨ نطق menu نقسم الكلمة إلى (men - u)
حيث ننطق men ثم ننطق حرف u كما ينطق فى الأبجدية.

٩ نطق 5th لنطق الأيام فى التواريخ ينطق
second ← 2nd / first ← 1st
third ← 3rd
ومع باقى الأرقام تضيف th تنطق مثل حرف "ث" أخر الكلمة fifth = 5th

١٠ تنطق كلمة pizza ← pitsa
حيث ينطق حرفى "zz" مثل حرف s وذلك لأن الكلمة أصلها إيطالى

١١ لنطق كلمة daily تنطق dai
مثل كلمة day ثم تنطق ly





أسئلة مجمعة من اختبارات الأعوام السابقة

1 Listen and circle:



نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

1. a. He had two cups of coffee. b. He had two glasses of orange juice.
   البحيرة - إدارة وادى النطرون 2016
2. a. She had one bottle of water. b. She had three bottles of water.
   البحر الأحمر - إدارة الغردقة 2016
3. a. How about a salad? b. How about a steak?
   الأقصر - إدارة الأقصر 2016
4. a. Do you like bread? b. Do you like rice?

2 Listen and complete:



نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار | الاسماعيلية - إدارة القصاصين 2017

Sara : Good morning. What's today's ① ....?
Man : Good morning. We have ② .... and a baked potato.
Sara : I'm in the ③ .... for spaghetti and meat.
Man : Here you are. Do you like anything to ④ ....?
Sara : Yes, please. I'd like orange juice.
Man : OK, lady.
Sara : Thank you.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- How .... cups do you have? (الفيوم - إدارة أبشواى 2017)
   a much b high c often d many
2- She drank two .... of water. (سوهاج - إدارة سوهاج 2017)
   a loaves b slices c pieces d bottles
3- I had two .... of roast beef. (الجيزة - إدارة إمبابة 2016)
   a loaves b slices c cups d bottles
4- She had two .... of coffee. (القاهرة - إدارة المرج 2016)
   a plates b cups c slices d pieces
5- I will .... a steak. (سوهاج - إدارة ساقلتة 2015)
   a drink b write c have d watch
6- Nada is in the .... for chicken soup. (المنوفية - إدارة أشمون 2016)
   a man b moon c mind d mood

7- How .... bottles of milk does she have? 2018 الشرقية - إدارة ديرب نجم

a many b much c long d often

8- I will take a .... of apple pie. 2018 المنوفية - إدارة تلا

a piece b bottle c glass d cup

4 Read the passage and answer the questions: 2019 القليوبية - إدارة قليوب

Israa and Hazem went to a restaurant last week. Israa ordered a steak. She likes it medium. She ordered a baked potato and a salad. She had two pieces of apple pie and a bowl of fruit salad. Hazem was in the mood for spaghetti and meatballs. He didn't have a salad. He had ice cream for dessert. The food was delicious.

A- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1- The potato that Israa ordered was ....

a with soup b with bread c in a bowl d baked

2- Israa likes her steak ....

a medium b well done c rare d in a glass

B- Answer the following questions:

3- What did Hazem have? ....

4- Did Hazem have a dessert? ....

5 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1- your - What - favourite - is - food? 2018 الاسكندرية - إدارة العجمي

....

2- bottles - two - had - water - He - of. 2017 البحيرة - إدارة ايتاي البارود

....

3- is - When - open - Ali's - Grandpa? 2016 المنوفية - إدارة الشهداء

....

4- three - had - She - slices - roast beef - of. 2015 أسيوط - إدارة الغنايم

....

5- want - spaghetti - the - Does - man? 2017 الفيوم - إدارة ابشواي

....

6 Punctuate the following:

- Yes Basem had a glass of milk today 2017 المنيا - إدارة العدوة

....

Test 2 Unit 2

1 Listen and circle:

نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

1. a. Chicken and rice. b. Turkey and salad.
2. a. He had two cups of coffee. b. He had two glasses of orange juice. الاسكندرية - إدارة العصافرة 2018
3. a. What did you have for lunch? b. What did you have for dinner? السويس - إدارة جبل عتاقة 2018
4. a. How many cups do you have? b. How many glasses do you have? بورسعيد - إدارة بورسعيد 2015

2 Listen and complete:

نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار | بورسعيد - إدارة 2018

Waiter : Are you ready to order?
Ali : I think so. I'll have a ❶ ....
Waiter : Rare, medium or ❷ .... done?
Ali : Medium, please. And a baked ❸ ....
Waiter : How ❹ .... a salad?
Ali : Sounds good.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- He had a .... of orange juice.
a slice b can c bowl d loaf

2- How much fruit salad can you .... ? الاسماعيلية - إدارة الاسماعيلية 2015
a eats b eat c eating d ate

3- .... cans of lemonade did she have?
a How much b How often c How old d How many

4- At this restaurant, children under five eat .... البحيرة - إدارة الدلنجات 2016
a tree b three c degree d free

5- I'd like a .... of roast turkey. 2016 الشرقية - إدارة مشتول السوق

a slice b cup c loaf d bottle

6- How .... loaves of bread did he have? 2015 أسيوط - إدارة أسيوط

a much b many c a d an

7- My mother puts the soup in a .... 2018 الإسكندرية - إدارة المنتزة

a loaf b can c bowl d slice

8- I'm in the .... for spaghetti. I love it. 2018 الجيزة - إدارة منشأة القناطر

a mood b book c pen d flavour

4 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one:

Answer

1	buy	think	good	look	....
2	bottle	glass	cup	cost	....
3	salad	spaghetti	delicious	meatballs	....
4	coffee	waiter	lemonade	juice	....
5	shirt	fruit	apple	orange	....

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: WB

Big Mama's is a new Italian restaurant in Cairo. It opened on Wednesday. Who is Big Mama? Big Mama is the owner. She's the chef, too! On Friday, Tom and his friend Ramy ate dinner at Big Mama's. Tom said, "Big Mama's meatballs are the best meatballs in town." Ramy said, "I'm going to bring my sister here tomorrow. Kids under six eat free!"

A- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1- Kids .... six eat free.

a on b in c under d with

2- Big Mama's serves the best .... in town.

a pizza b meatballs c spaghetti d pies

B- Answer the following questions:

3- Who is the chef at Big Mama's? ....

4- When did Big Mama's open? ....

6 Write an email of SEVEN (7) sentences:

2018 كفر الشيخ - إدارة الحامول

Write an email to your friend Sami telling him about the lunch you had at a restaurant. Your name is Hani and your email address is hani59@yahoo.com and your friend's email address is sami39@hotmail.com.

New Message

To .... Cc Bcc

From ....

Subject ....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1- a bottle - I'll - water - of - have. 2016 الشرقية - إدارة ديرب نجم

....

2- you - meatballs - Are - the mood - in - for? 2016 السويس - إدارة الأربعين

....

8 Punctuate the following:

1- how much bread did Mona eat on friday? 2018 الغربية - إدارة شرق طنطا

....

2- Last sunday, Samir went to the restaurant

....





Test 3 Units 1 & 2

1 Listen and circle:

نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

1. a. Pizza and salad. b. Spaghetti and meatballs. (اسيوط - إدارة البدارى 2018)
2. a. Yes, there was. b. No, there wasn't.
3. a. Do you like fish? b. Do you like meat?
4. a. What will the man have for lunch? b. What will the man have for dinner?

2 Listen and complete:

نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار (القاهرة - إدارة المرج 2015)

Sokkara : Where did you go yesterday, Mona?

Mona : I went to a ① ....

Sokkara : What did you ② ....?

Mona : I had one bowl of ③ .... salad and a cup of coffee.

Sokkara : Did you get enough ④ ....?

Mona : I didn't eat enough, I'm too thin.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- The hotel is across .... our school. (دمياط - إدارة كفر سعد 2015)
a of b from c on d to

2- How can I .... you with your homework? (الشرقية - إدارة الزقازيق 2015)
a helped b helping c helps d help

3- I want a .... of water.
a bottle b slice c piece d loaf

4- .... a nice weekend, Ashraf. (الدقهلية - إدارة أجا 2015)
a Has b Have c Is d Having

5- How .... slices of turkey did he have? (القاهرة - إدارة عين شمس 2015)
a much b number c ones d many

6- .... there a pavement in front of the school last year?

a Are b Is c Was d Were

7- How .... juice do you want?

a many b often c much d old

8- My hair is long, so I went to the ....

a dentist b baker c barber's d farmer

4 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one:

					Answer
1	tomato	vanilla	chocolate	hotel	....
2	juice	bank	library	post office	....
3	near	rare	next to	behind	....
4	new	good	serve	ready	....
5	turkey	chicken	water	bread	....

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

2015 أسيوط - إدارة الغنايم

Last Friday was Heba's birthday. Her mother bought her a nice dress. Her brother bought her a good book because she likes reading. Her father took the family to a big restaurant. They had roast turkey and cake. They drank orange juice. They went back home at ten o'clock. Heba was very happy.

A- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1- Heba's father took the family to a ....

a zoo b park c restaurant d museum

2- They drank ....

a orange juice b milk c tea d lemonade

B- Answer the following questions:

3- Why did Heba's brother buy her a book?

....

4- When did they go back home?

....



6 Write an email of SEVEN (7) sentences:

Write an email to your friend Eman telling her about the restaurant your grandpa bought yesterday. Your name is Sarah and your email address is sarah13@yahoo.com and your friend's email address is eman15@hotmail.com.

New Message

To .... Cc Bcc

From ....

Subject ....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1- Fridays - you - open - Are - on? 2015 المنيا - إدارة ملوى

....

2- of - six - had - He - loaves - bread. 2016 دمياط - إدارة كفر البطيخ

....

8 Punctuate the following:

1- what is your favourite food, Amgad 2016 المنوفية -إدارة تلا

....

2- We went to the egyptian Museum yesterday

....





Unit 2 Listening materials



Exercises Lesson 1

1 Listen and circle:

1- What's today's special? - A salad and a steak.
2- What will you have? - I'll have spaghetti.
3- What's your favourite food? - Spaghetti and meatballs.
4- Are you ready to order? - I think so. I'll have steak.

2 Listen and complete:

Waiter : Hello. Are you ready to order?
Hany : I think **so**. I'll have fish.
Waiter : How **about** meatballs?
Hany : Sounds **good**. What's today's special?
Waiter : Chicken and spaghetti.
Hany : Good! I'm in the **mood** for spaghetti.

Exercises Lesson 2

1 Listen and circle:

1- What are you going to eat? - A steak and salad.
2- What are you going to have? - I don't know.
3- What did you have for lunch? - I had some French fries.
4- Do you like fish? - Yes, I do.

2 Listen and complete:

Father : What are you going to **eat**?
Mother : I don't know.
Father : I'm going to have some French fries and a hot dog.
Mother : That **sounds** good. I'll have that, too.
Waiter : Here you **are**.
Mother : Thanks. It looks delicious.
Father : How **about** some more water?
Mother : No, thanks.

Exercises Lesson 3

1 Listen and circle:

1- How many glasses of orange juice did you have? - I had two glasses of orange juice.
2- What is she going to have? - She's going to have an apple pie.
3- How much lemonade did they have? - They had two cans of lemonade.
4- How many glasses do you have? - I have five glasses.



Unit 2 Listening materials

2 Listen and complete:

Miss Fatma : Where did you go yesterday, Rawan?
Rawan : I went to a restaurant.
Miss Fatma : What did you have?
Rawan : I had one bowl of fruit salad and a cup of tea.
Miss Fatma : Did you have a piece of apple pie?
Rawan : No, I didn't.

Exercises Lesson 4

1 Listen and circle:

1- What does this restaurant serve? - Lunch and drinks.
2- Where's your uncle's restaurant? - In Giza.
3- Who is the chef at this restaurant? - Ahmed Osman.
4- What do you want to have? - Pasta.

2 Listen and complete:

Retaj : Where are you going, Marwa?
Marwa : I'm going to my grandfather's restaurant.
Retaj : Where is it?
Marwa : It's in Cairo.
Retaj : What will you have there?
Marwa : Pizza and juice.



أسئلة مجمعة من اختبارات الاعوام السابقة

1 Listen and circle:

1- How many cups of coffee did he have? - He had two cups of coffee.
2- How much water did she have? - She had one bottle of water.
3- How about a salad? - Sounds good.
4- Do you like bread? - Yes, I do.

2 Listen and complete:

Sara : Good morning. What's today's special?
Man : Good morning. We have meatballs and a baked potato.
Sara : I'm in the mood for spaghetti and meat.

Man : Here you are. Do you like anything to **drink**?

Sara : Yes, please. I'd like orange juice.

Man : OK, lady.

Sara : Thank you.



1 Listen and circle:

1- What's today's special? - Turkey and salad.

2- How many cups did he have? - He had two cups of coffee.

3- What did you have for lunch? - Meatballs and rice.

4- How many cups do you have? - Three.

2 Listen and complete:

Waiter : Are you ready to order?

Ali : I think so. I'll have a **steak**.

Waiter : Rare, medium or **well** done?

Ali : Medium, please. And a baked **potato**.

Waiter : How **about** a salad?

Ali : Sounds good.

Test 3 Units 1 & 2

1 Listen and circle:

1- What will you have? - Spaghetti and meatballs.

2- Was there a shop beside the library? - Yes, there was.

3- Do you like meat? - No, I don't.

4- What will the man have for dinner? - He'll have cheese and eggs.

2 Listen and complete:

Sokkara : Where did you go yesterday, Mona?

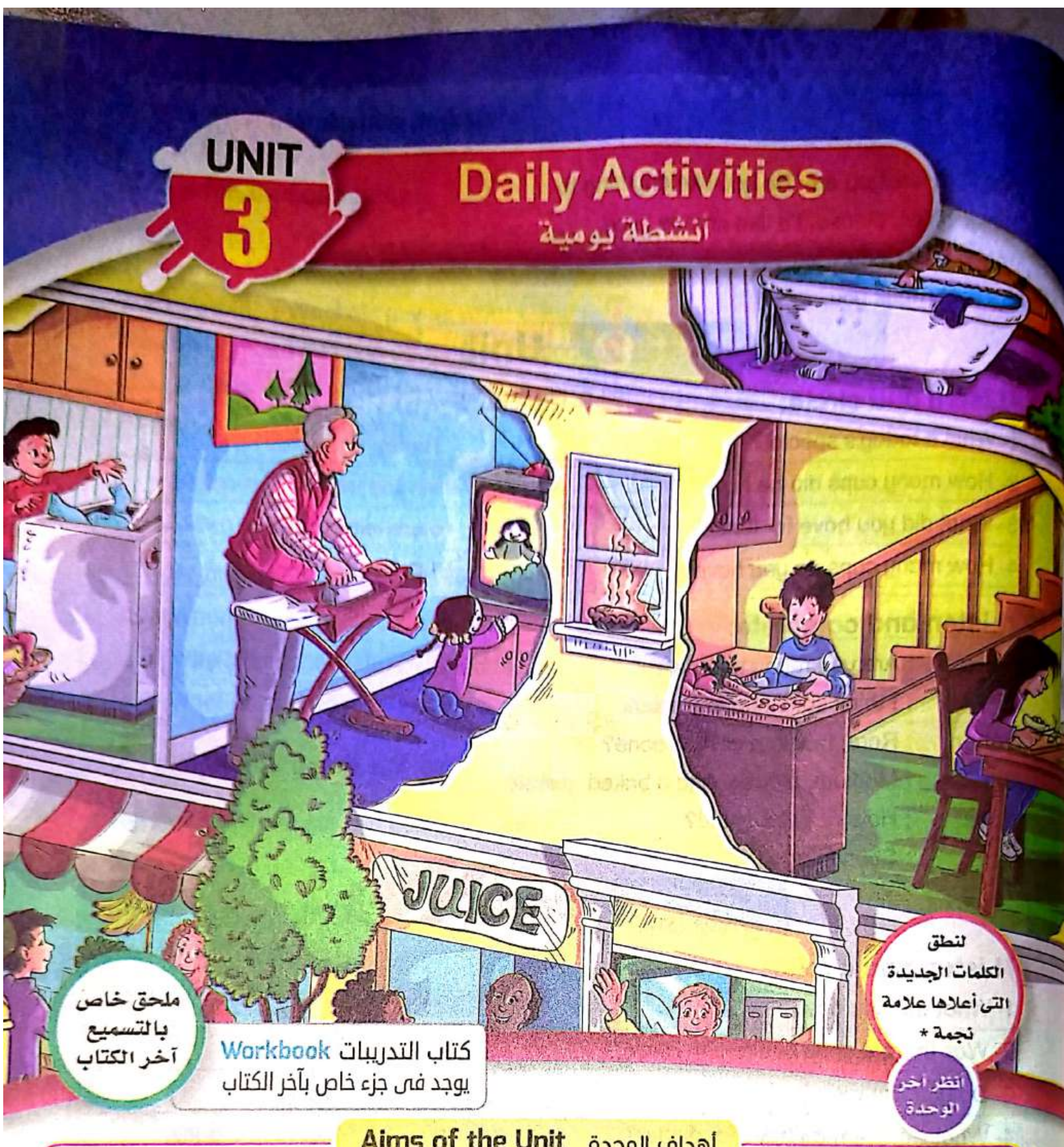
Mona : I went to a **restaurant**.

Sokkara : What did you **have**?

Mona : I had one bowl of **fruit** salad and a cup of coffee.

Sokkara : Did you get enough **food**?

Mona : I didn't eat enough, I'm too thin.



Aims of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

Conversation Time | Lesson 1 - SB: P. 13 /WB:P. 13

- shop for a pie at a bakery
- شراء فطيرة من مخبز
- express activities in the past
- التعبير عن الأنشطة فى الماضى
- identify speakers in a conversation
- التعرف على المتحدثين فى محادثة

Word Time | Lesson 2 - SB: P.14 /WB:P. 14

- vocabulary: daily activities
- مفردات، الأنشطة اليومية

Focus Time & Practice Time | Lesson 3 - SB: P. 15-16/WB:P. 15-16

- use emphatic pronouns: (by) myself - himself - herself - yourself - yourselves - themselves - ourselves
- استخدام الضمائر المنعكسة لتؤكد عمل الشخص لشىء بنفسه / لنفسه
- past simple, affirmative & negative statements
- استخدام صيغة الماضى البسيط فى الجمل المثبتة والمنفية

Reading Time & Your Time | Lesson 4 - SB: P. 17-18 /WB:P. 17-18

- read a short story
- قراءة قصة قصيرة

Lesson 1

Conversation Time

وقت المحادثة

SB Page: 13 • WB Page: 13

Vocabulary مفردات

Kinds of pies أنواع الفطائر

lemon pie	فطيرة ليمون	apple pie	فطيرة تفاح
peach pie	فطيرة خوخ	cherry pie	فطيرة كريز

Kinds of cookies أنواع الكعك

lemon cookies	كعك بالليمون	butter cookies	كعك بالزبدة
chocolate chip cookies	كعك بشرائح الشيكولاتة	peanut butter cookies	كعك بزبدة الفول السوداني

Adjectives صفات

nice	لطيف	great	رائع / عظيم
expensive	غالي الثمن	sorry	آسف
fresh	طازج		

Other words كلمات أخرى

(be) out of	نفد (لم يعد لديه)	fresh pie	فطيرة طازجة
baker	خباز	What kinds of?	ما الأنواع من؟
bakery	مخبز	customer	زبون
pounds	جنيهات	too	جدًا (أكثر من اللازم)
How much?	كم سعر؟	each	لكل واحدة
Okay.	حسنًا.	today	اليوم

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال



Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
help	يساعد	helped	

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
take	يأخذ	took	
get	يحضر	got	
can	يستطيع	could	

Read and learn
اقرأ وتعلم

What kinds of pies do you have today?	ما أنواع الفطائر التى لديكم اليوم؟
We have lemon, peach, and apple.	لدينا فطائر بالليمون و الخوخ و التفاح.
Do you have any cherry pies?	هل لديك أى من فطائر الكريز؟
Sorry. We're out of cherry.	آسف . لم يعد لدينا كريز .
How much are the peach pies?	كم سعر فطائر الخوخ؟
They are five pounds each.	سعرها خمسة جنيهات للواحدة.
Okay. I'll take one.	حسناً . سوف آخذ واحدة.
Great! I'll get a fresh pie for you.	عظيم! سوف أحضر فطيرة طازجة لك .

A Listen and repeat. Point to the speakers. Then listen again.

استمع وردد. قم بالإشارة إلى المتحدثين ثم استمع مرة أخرى.



Tapescript نص الاستماع

1



Baker : Good morning. Can I help you?

Customer : Yes, please. What kinds of pies do you have today?

2



Baker : We have lemon, peach, and apple.

3



Customer : Do you have any cherry pies?

Baker : Sorry. We're out of cherry. But the apple pies are very nice.



4 **Customer** : How much are they?

Baker : They're ten pounds each.



5 **Customer** : Oh, that's too expensive. How much are the peach pies?

Baker : They're five pounds each.



6 **Customer** : Okay. I'll take one.

Baker : Great! I'll get a fresh pie for you.



B Role-play the conversation:

يقوم التلاميذ بتمثيل المحادثة معاً:




Grammar
قواعد لغوية

1 What kinds of + اسم .....? ما هى أنواع ....؟

- What kinds of pies do you have?

  We have lemon, peach and apple.

2 Do you have any + اسم .....? هل لديك أى..؟

- Do you have any cherry pies?

  Yes, we have cherry pies. — للرد بالإثبات: نعم، لدينا فطائر الكريز.

  Sorry. We are out of them. — للرد بالنفى: آسف. لم يعد لدينا فطائر الكريز.

> • لاحظ أن كلمة **any** تُستخدم فى السؤال و النفى وتُوضع قبل الاسم المفرد (الذى لا يعد) أو الاسم الذى يعد فى صيغة الجمع.

- Do you have **any** lemons? (سؤال)

  No, I **don't** have **any** lemons. (نفى)

3 How much......? كم الثمن ...؟

• How much are the peach pies?
They are five pounds each.

4 too + صفة جدا (أكثر من اللازم)

• This shirt is too expensive. (I can't buy it.)

هذا القميص غالى جدًا . (لا أستطيع شرائه).

5 get + شيء + for + شخص (مفعول).. (يحضر شئ لشخص) = get + شخص (مفعول) + شيء

• I'll get a fresh pie for you. = I'll get you a fresh pie.

6 Prepositions حروف الجر

• kind of نوع من / (be) out of نفد / get for يحضر شيء لـ

Language Functions وظائف لغوية

1 Offering help :

• تقديم المساعدة :

- Can I help you?
هل أستطيع مساعدتك؟

- Yes, please.
الرد: نعم ، من فضلك .

2 Apology :

• الاعتذار :

- Sorry. We're out of cherry.
آسف . لقد نفد الكريز .

3 Agreeing :

• الموافقة :

- Okay. I'll take one.
حسنًا . سآخذ واحدة.

- Great! I'll get a fresh pie for you.
رائع! سأحضر فطيرة طازجة لك .

Lesson ① EXERCISES

تدريبات

① Listen and circle:



نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

1. a. Smells good. b. They are very nice.
2. a. They are ten pounds each. b. They are five pounds each.

المنوفية - إدارة السادات 2018

3. a. Do you have any cherry pies? b. Do you have any peach pies?
4. a. How much is this pie? b. How much does it cost?

② Listen and complete:



نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

الجيزة - إدارة إمبابة 2018

Huda : Good morning. Can I help you?

Noha : Yes, please. What kinds of pies do you have ❶ ....?

Huda : We have lemon, peach and apple.

Noha : Do you have any cherry pies?

Huda : Sorry. We're out of cherry. But the ❷ .... pies are very nice.

Noha : How ❸ .... are they?

Huda : They're ten pounds ❹ ....

③ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- My younger brother loves chocolate .... cookies.

a ship b shop c chip d chop

2- We buy cookies and bread at the ....

a library b barber's c school d bakery

3- I can't buy this T-shirt. It's .... expensive.

a two b too c tea d to

4- I'll get a .... pie for you.

a bad b fresh c sorry d sad



5- The peach pies are five pounds ....

a for b no c every d each

6- Do you have .... cookies?

a any b one c a d some

كفر الشيخ - إدارة سيدى سالم 2018

7- How can I .... you, Adel?

a helps b helped c help d helping

سوهاج - إدارة سوهاج 2018

8- The car is .... It costs a lot of money.

a high b expensive c cheap d bad

4 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one:

قنا - إدارة قفط 2019

				Answer
1 eat	buy	week	take	....
2 bakery	restaurant	shop	cherry	....
3 doctor	bottle	teacher	baker	....
4 chef	expensive	fresh	nice	....
5 lemon	cup	peach	apple	....

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

My brother Hani likes pies. Yesterday, he went to the bakery near our house. He asked the baker about kinds of pies. There were peach, apple and lemon pies. Hani bought two peach pies. They were five pounds each. Then, he went home and gave me a peach pie. It was fresh and delicious.

A- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1- Hani went to the .... yesterday.

a restaurant b bakery c market d park

2- Hani .... two peach pies.

a baked b lost c bought d made

B- Answer the following questions:

3- How much were the two pies?

....

4- What kinds of pies did Hani find in the bakery?

....

6 Write a paragraph of SEVEN (7) sentences:

"A fresh pie"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....

7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1- you - any - Do - pies - have - peach? — 2018 السويس - إدارة جبل عتاقة

....

2- today - We - out of - are - cherry. — 2018 الشرقية - إدارة ديرب نجم

....

3- are - They - each - pounds - five. — 2018 أسوان - إدارة إدفو

....

4- pies - very - apple - The - are - nice. — 2016 بني سويف - إدارة الفشن

....

5- can - you - How - help - I ? — 2018 المنوفية - إدارة شبين الكوم

....

8 Punctuate the following:

1- We ll buy a fresh one for Ahmed — 2018 الدقهلية - إدارة أجا

....

2- Can i have a chocolate cake, please — 2015 السويس - إدارة الأربعين

....

Lesson 2

Word Time

وقت الكلمات

SB Page: 14 • WB Page: 14

Daily Activities أنشطة يومية



* walk to school يمشي إلى المدرسة



go to the dentist يذهب إلى طبيب الأسنان



* do laundry يقوم بغسل الملابس



chop vegetables يقطع الخضراوات



* iron a shirt يكوى قميص



* slice fruit يقطع الفواكه إلى شرائح



take a bus يركب أتوبيس





wash my hair اغسل شعرى



stay home يبقى بالمنزل (يمكث)



buy groceries يشترى سلع البقالة



Vocabulary مفردات

mouse	فأر	beside	بجوار
hungry	جائع	a medium apple juice	عصير تفاح متوسط الحجم
mine	ملكى	toothache	الم بالاسنان

Expressions تعبيرات

I don't know.	لا أعرف.	Here you are.	تفضل.
on the pavement	على الرصيف		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
walk	يمشى	walked
chop	يقطع (قطع صغيرة)	chopped
iron	يكوى الملابس	ironed
slice	يقطع إلى شرائح	sliced
wash	يغسل	washed
stay	يبقى / يمكث	stayed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
go	يذهب	went
do / does	يفعل	did
take	يأخذ	took
have / has	يتناول	had
buy	يشترى	bought
know	يعرف	knew



Unit 3 Daily Activities

(A) Listen and repeat:

استمع وردد:

يستمع التلاميذ إلى الكلمات الآتية ويرددونها ثم يقومون بالإشارة إلى الصورة المعبرة عن كل كلمة.

1. walk to school
2. go to the dentist
3. do laundry
4. chop vegetables
5. iron a shirt
6. slice fruit
7. take a bus
8. wash my hair
9. stay home
10. buy groceries

(B) Point and say the words:

أشر إلى الصور السابقة وقل الكلمات:

Tapescript نص الاستماع

(C) Listen and point.

استمع وأشر .

• استمع وأشر إلى صور الأشخاص الذين يقومون بفعل الأنشطة اليومية بالصفحة السابقة.

- Do laundry.
- Go to the dentist.
- Slice fruit.
- Buy groceries.
- Wash my hair.
- Iron a shirt.
- Take a bus.
- Chop vegetables.
- Stay home.
- Walk to school.

• Now listen and point to the speakers.

• انظر إلى الصورة السابقة وأشر إلى المتحدثين .

1
A : Was there a mouse beside that tree? **B :** Where?
A : Beside that tree, on the pavement. **B :** I don't know.

2
A : Hi, Mr. Adam. How much is a medium apple juice?
B : It's two pounds.
A : Great! I'll take one, please.
B : Here you are.

3
A : Look! My apple is bigger than your apple. **B :** But, I'm so hungry.
A : Here. You can have mine. **B :** Thanks!

Answers

1- Kareem and friend — كريم وصديقه
2- Shop assistant and girl at juice stand — بائع في محل وفتاة عند طاولة بيع العصير
3- Mona and friend — منى وصديقتها



1 going to (سوف)

• تستخدم going to بمعنى سوف للتعبير عن فعل مخطط له في المستقبل .

I +	am	+ going to + inf. مصدر الفعل
He / She / It +	is	
You / We / They +	are	

• I'm going to buy groceries at 7 o'clock. • He is going to iron a shirt at 9 o'clock.
• They are going to do laundry at 3 o'clock.

2 Express likes / dislikes التعبير عما تحب/ لا تحب

أولا: التعبير عما تحب:

I / We / You / They / اسم جمع + like to + inf.
He / She / It / اسم مفرد + likes to + inf.

- They like to slice fruit.
- She likes to do laundry.

ثانيا: التعبير عما لا تحب:

I / We / You / They / اسم جمع + don't like + to + inf.
He / She / It / اسم مفرد + doesn't like + to + inf.

- I like to stay home. → I don't like to stay home.
- He likes to wash his hair. → He doesn't like to wash his hair.

- لاحظ حذف حرف (s) مع He / She / It عند النفي بـ doesn't.

Lesson 2 EXERCISES تدريبات

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- You didn't .... your hair yesterday .
a wash b watch c wear d clean

2- Today, I'm going to .... to school.
a walks b walking c walk d walked

3- Miss Tahany .... a bus to go to the hospital.
a went b took c washed d stayed

4- Please, ... these vegetables to make a salad.
a walk b do c chop d iron

5- My sister went to the supermarket to buy ....
a medicines b groceries c buses d books

6- The mother .... fruit to feed the kids.
a irons b slices c stays d goes

7- I'm going to the .... as I have a toothache. (2018 أسيوط - إدارة البداري)
a dentist b supermarket c grocer d vet



8- I stayed .... on Friday as it was a holiday. بورسعيد - إدارة بور فؤاد 2018

a park b office c work d home

9- My mother .... the laundry. البحيرة - إدارة ايتاى البارود 2018

a sliced b chopped c did d fed

10- I .... the shirt. السويس - إدارة الأربعين 2018

a stayed b walked c ironed d went

2 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one:

				Answer
1 April	Kareem	Adam	Samy	....
2 dentist	doctor	teacher	fruit	....
3 buy	laundry	wash	slice	....
4 home	restaurant	mouse	school	....
5 on	beside	took	under	....

3 Read the passage and answer the questions: الإسماعيلية - إدارة فايد 2015

Mrs. Hoda has a nice family. She has two girls. Everyone كل فرد in the family does a good job in the house. Mr. Ali, the father, drives Basma and her sister Mariam to school. Mrs. Hoda cooks for the family and buys the groceries. Basma irons the school shirts and does the laundry. Mariam likes chopping vegetables. Mrs. Hoda's family is a happy one because they help each other.

A- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1- There are .... members أفراد in Mrs. Hoda's family.

a three b four c five d two

2- Mrs. Hoda .... for the family.

a cooks food b irons shirts
c slices fruit d does the laundry

B- Answer the following questions:

3- What does the father do for Basma and Mariam?

....

4- Why is Mrs. Hoda's family a happy one?

....

4 Write an email of SEVEN (7) sentences:

Write an email to your friend Magdy to tell him about your family and the activities they do. Your name is Hassan and your email address is hassan33@yahoo.com and your friend's email address is magdy67@hotmail.com.

New Message

To .... Cc Bcc

From ....

Subject ....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

5 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1- much - a medium - How - juice - apple - is?

....

2- buy - Did - groceries - yesterday - you?

....

3- a - mouse - There - is - tree - the - beside. 2016 الجيزة - إدارة أطفيح

....

4- home - stayed - Tuesday - I - on. 2018 السويس - إدارة الجناين

....

5- she - do - the - laundry - going to - Is ? 2018 الدقهلية - إدارة دكرنس

....

6 Punctuate the following:

1- Yes Mona had a glass of juice today 2018 السويس - إدارة جبل عتاقة

....

2- Do sameh and Yasser slice fruit

....



Lesson 3

Focus Time
Practice Time وقت التدريب

SB Pages: 15 - 16 • WB Pages: 15 - 16



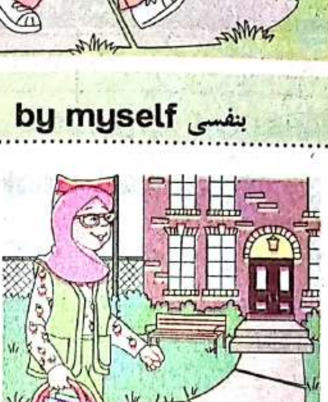
(A) Listen and repeat: استمع وردد :

① 

by myself بنفسي

② 

by himself بنفسه

③ 

by herself بنفسها

④ 

by yourself بنفسك

⑤ 

by yourselves بأنفسكم

⑥ 

by themselves بأنفسهم







by ourselves بأنفسنا

Conjugation of verbs
تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past ماضٍ
walk	يمشي	walked
chop	يقطع (قطع صغيرة)	chopped
iron	يكوى الملابس	ironed
slice	يقطع إلى شرائح	sliced
wash	يغسل	washed
stay	يبقى / يمكث	stayed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past ماضٍ
go	يذهب	went
do / does	يفعل	did
take	يأخذ	took
buy	يشترى	bought

B Listen and repeat: استمع وردد :

A: I ironed a shirt by myself.

B: I didn't iron a shirt by myself.

C Look at page 14. Listen and point:

• انظر إلى الصورة بالصفحة ١٤ بكتاب المدرسة ثم اشر إلى ما تسمعه.

A: She cut fruit by herself.

B: She didn't wash her hair by herself.

A: They took a bus by themselves.





1 Reflexive pronouns الضمائر المنعكسة (التوكيدية)

- تستخدم الضمائر التوكيدية للتأكيد على من قام بالفعل وعلى أنه قام بالفعل بمفرده ودون مساعدة أحد:
- لاحظ الجدول التالى لضمائر الفاعل وصفات الملكية والضمائر التوكيدية (المنعكسة):

ضمائر الفاعل	الضمائر التوكيدية	ضمائر الفاعل	الضمائر التوكيدية (المنعكسة)
I	(by) myself	You أنت	(by) yourself
He (Ahmed)	(by) himself	You أنتم	(by) yourselves
She (Fatma)	(by) herself	We نحن	(by) ourselves
It (cat)	(by) itself	They (Kareem and Mona) هم	(by) themselves

لاحظ الآتى

- أن الضمائر التوكيدية الآتية تنتهى بـ **(self)** لأن الفاعل مفرد ولاحظ أيضًا صفات الملكية المستخدمة مع كل ضمير:

- I washed my hair by myself.
- Amir (he) chopped vegetables by himself.
- Sama (she) ironed her shirt by herself.
- You took a bus by yourself.

- لاحظ هنا أن you مفرد بمعنى أنت.

لاحظ الآتى

- فى الأمثلة الآتية ينتهى الضمير التوكيدي بـ **(selves)** لأن الفاعل يكون جمع.

- لاحظ هنا أن you جمع بمعنى أنتم.

- You stayed home by yourselves.
- We walked to our school by ourselves.
- Omar and Wafaa (they) bought their groceries by themselves.

- لاحظ أن الاسم يستبدل بالضمير التوكيدي الذى يدل عليه.
- لاحظ إذا بدأت الجملة بمصدر الفعل يكون الضمير المنعكس yourself / yourselves.

- Do the laundry by yourself. (هنا بمعنى أنت)
- Walk to school by yourselves. (هنا بمعنى أنتم)

- لاحظ الجملة الآتية بدأت باسم لكنها جملة امرية.

- Ahmed, iron the shirt by yourself.
- Ahmed and Tamer are my friends. I love .... so much.

a them   b him   c themselves   d ourselves

- لاحظ الاختيار سيكون ضمير them ضمير المفعول وليس ضمير الملكية.

2 The Past Simple زمن الماضى البسيط

Form التكوين

- يكون زمن الماضى البسيط بإضافة d أو ed لمصدر الأفعال المنتظمة regular verbs ، مثال ذلك:

like → liked | visit → visited

- وهناك بعض الأفعال يضاعف الحرف الأخير بها عند إضافة ed :

chop → chopped | stop → stopped

- وهناك أفعال غير منتظمة irregular verbs نستخدم التصريف الثانى لها وتحفظ ، مثال ذلك:

send → sent | eat → ate

- He visited his uncle last week.
- She did laundry by herself.
- We went to the dentist yesterday.

Usage الاستخدام

- يعبر زمن الماضى البسيط عن شيء بدأ وانتهى فى الماضى.

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

- غالبًا ما يستخدم زمن الماضى البسيط مع الكلمات الآتية:

yesterday أمس - once ذات مرة - (a week - two years) ago منذ
[last الماضى (week - month - year)] - in 1998 (سنة ماضية)

Question السؤال

- للسؤال بمعنى "هل...؟" فى زمن الماضى البسيط نستخدم:

Did + الفاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل ....?

- Did you wash your hair by yourself yesterday?
- Did they chop vegetables by themselves?

- وفى حالة الإجابة المختصرة نستخدم:

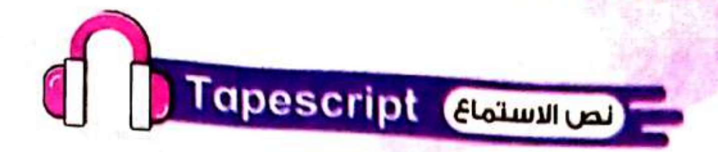
- Yes, + الفاعل + did. (للإثبات)
- No, + الفاعل + didn't. (للنفى)

Negative النفى

- لنفى الفعل فى زمن الماضى البسيط نستخدم :

الفاعل + did not (=didn't) + inf. مصدر الفعل

- I ironed a shirt. —نفى→ I didn't iron a shirt.
- He sliced the fruit. —نفى→ He didn't slice the fruit.
- They walked to school. —نفى→ They didn't walk to school.



(A) Listen and repeat. Then practise with a partner:

• استمع وردد ثم تُدرب مع زميلك . انظر إلى الصورة والكلمات المعطاة فى تكوين جمل على الضمائر المنعكسة .

You walked to school by yourselves.

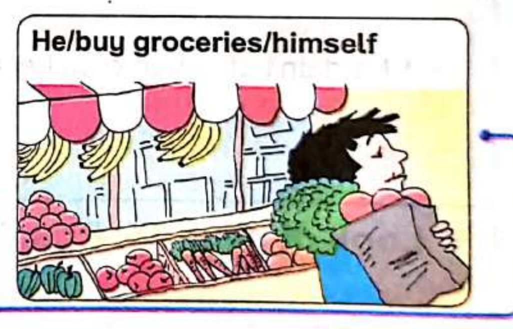
① I sliced fruit by myself.


I/slice fruit/myself

② You didn't wash your hair by yourself.

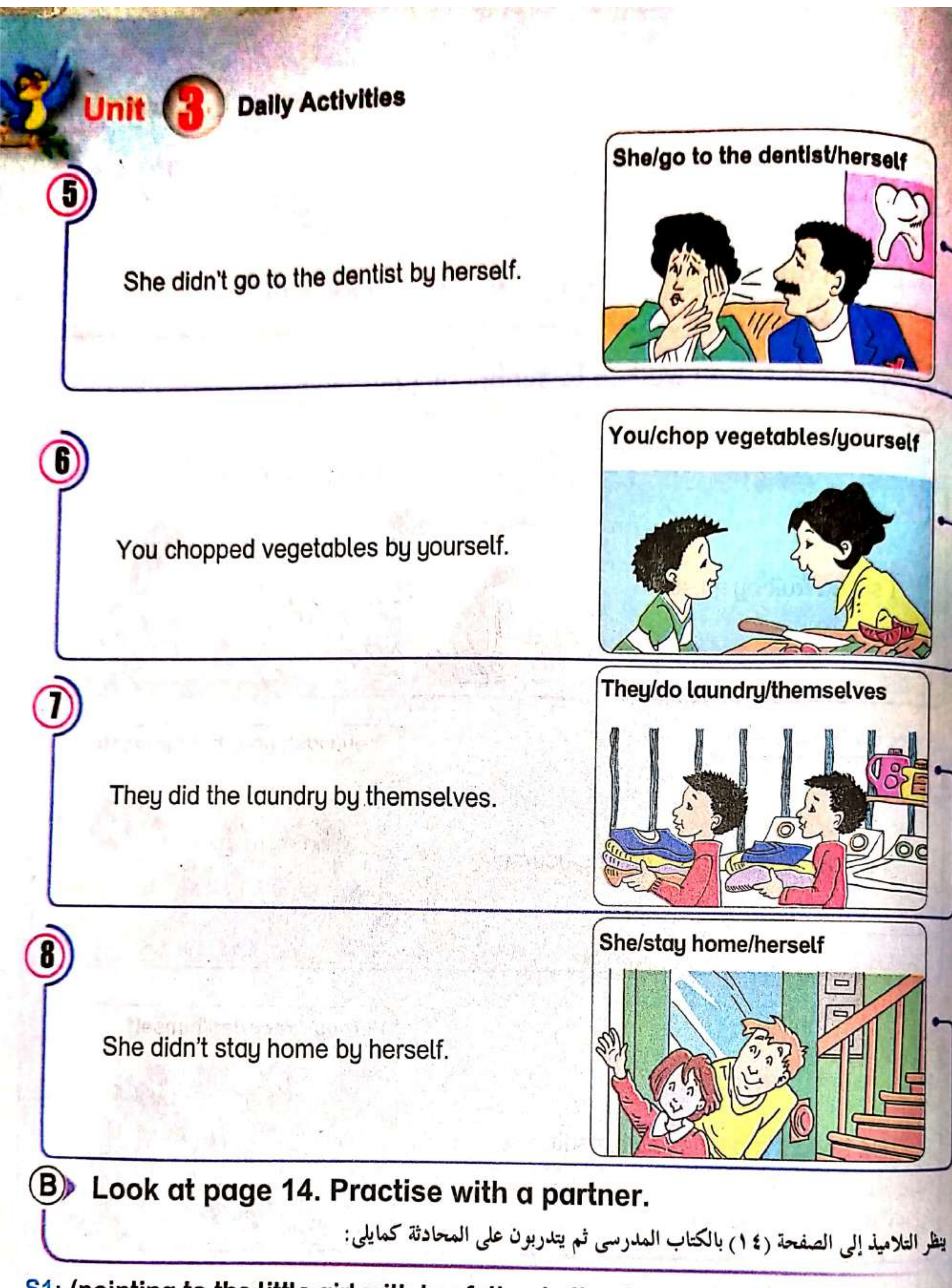

You/wash your hair/yourself

③ He bought groceries by himself.


He/buy groceries/himself

④ We took a bus by ourselves.


We/take a bus/ourselves



5. She didn't go to the dentist by herself.

6. You chopped vegetables by yourself.

7. They did the laundry by themselves.

8. She didn't stay home by herself.

B Look at page 14. Practise with a partner.

ينظر التلاميذ إلى الصفحة (١٤) بالكتاب المدرسى ثم يتدربون على المحادثة كمايلى:

S1: (pointing to the little girl with her father in the doorway)

يشير التلميذ الأول إلى الفتاة التى مع أبيها عند مدخل الباب ويقول:

She didn't stay home by herself.

S2: (pointing to the boy chopping vegetables)

يشير التلميذ الثانى إلى الولد الذى يقطع الخضراوات ويقول:

- He chopped vegetables by himself.



(C) Listen sing along:

استمع وغنوا سويا:

• يستمع التلاميذ إلى أغنية (I Stayed Home by Myself) ويرددونها:





I Stayed Home By Myself



I stayed home by myself.

By yourself.

She stayed home by herself.

By herself.

We did laundry by ourselves.

By yourselves.

They did laundry by themselves.

By themselves.

I walked to school by myself.

By yourself.

He walked to school by himself.

By himself.

We took a bus by ourselves.

By yourselves.

They took a bus by themselves.

By themselves.







EXERCISES
تدريبات

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- Samir went to the doctor by .... القاهرة- إدارة المقطم 2020

a himself b myself c itself d herself

2- Where .... Bill go yesterday? سوهاج - إدارة سوهاج 2018

a did b do c is d was

3- He did the laundry by .... الشرقية - إدارة كفر صقر 2018

a myself b herself c himself d itself

4- I washed the car by .... البحيرة - إدارة إيتاى البارود 2018

a myself b himself c itself d yourself

5- You didn't .... your hair by yourself. الاسكندرية - إدارة العجمى 2018

a washed b washing c wash d washes

6- You and your sister can do laundry by .... القليوبية - إدارة قليوب 2018

a yourself b themselves c yourselves d ourselves

7- Hani and Mona walked to school by .... الجيزة - إدارة أوسيم 2018

a yourselves b themselves c herself d ourselves

8- Did .... slice the vegetables by himself? الأقصر-إدارة الأقصر 2019

a we b you c she d he

9- We buy the groceries by ....

a ourselves b myself c herself d themselves

10- I buy my things by .... البحيرة - إدارة دمنهور 2016

a himself b herself c myself d ourselves

11- .... didn't stay home by themselves.

a They b You c He d We

12- We .... a bus by ourselves yesterday.

a takes b took c taking d take

2 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one:

				Answer
1 stay	bought	slice	wash	....
2 wash	buy	hair	take	....
3 chop	himself	take	walk	....
4 myself	herself	himself	them	....
5 yourself	she	we	he	....

3 Read the passage and answer the questions:

الوادى الجديد - إدارة الواحات 2015

I am Mona. I have one brother. His name is Kareem. Yesterday, we went to the bank. It was in front of the bakery near the hotel.We went by ourselves. We got some money. We went back home by bus. At home, I ironed a dress and Kareem watched TV. My friend Hasnaa visited me at home and we went to the birthday party of our friend Reem.

A- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1- Mona went to the bank ....

a by herself b with Kareem c with Hasnaa d with her sister

2- They went back home ....

a on foot b by bike c by train d by bus

B- Answer the following questions:

3- When did they go to the bank?

....

4- What did Kareem do at home?

....

4 Write an email of SEVEN (7) sentences:

Write an email to your friend Rawan about things you do every day. Your name is Fatma and your email address is fatma25@yahoo.com and your friend's email address is rawan35@gmail.com.

New Message

To .... Cc Bcc

From ....

Subject ....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

5 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1- take - Did - a bus - Kareem - himself - by?

....

2- myself - I - a shirt - by - ironed. (السويس - إدارة الأربعين 2016)

....

3- yourself - chop - by - Did - you - vegetables?

....

4- can't - cookies - She - herself - bake - by. (الدقهلية - إدارة شرق المنصورة 2018)

....

5- laundry - the - themselves - can - They - do - by. (كفر الشيخ - إدارة قلين 2018)

....

6 Punctuate the following:

1- what did Marwa and Yara do

....

2- Ashraf and Kareem didn t walk to school by themselves

....



وقت القراءة

SB Pages: 17 - 18 • WB Pages: 17 - 18



مفردات

New Words كلمات جديدة

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
supermarket	سوبر ماركت	grocery list	قائمة مشتريات البقالة
arrive (d)	يصل	forget	ينسى
go home	يذهب للمنزل	get	يحصل على / يحضر
trolley	الترولي (عربة المشتروات أو الحقائب)	checkout	مكان الدفع في سوبر ماركت
pay*	يدفع	leave	يغادر

Other words كلمات أخرى

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
groceries	سلع البقالة	shop	محل
grocer	بقال	line	طابور
grocer's	محل البقالة	money	نقود
basket	سلة	by	بالقرب من / بواسطة
bookstore = bookshop	مكتبة بيع الكتب	checkout line	طابور مراجعة الحساب
toothache	ألم الأسنان		

Expressions تعبيرات

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
No problem.	لا توجد مشكلة .	for me	من أجلي
go on foot*	سيراً على الأقدام		

Prepositions حروف جر

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
go to	يذهب إلى	arrive at	يصل إلى (مكان صغير)
pay for	يدفع ثمن شيء		



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past ماضٍ
run back	يجرى عائدا	ran back
pay	يدفع مالا	paid *
leave	يترك / يغادر	left
say	يقول	said *
write	يكتب	wrote
forget	ينسى	forgot
put	يضع	put
get	يحضر / يحصل على	got
go home	يعود للمنزل	went home

Read and learn اقرأ وتعلم




- She put a grocery list and some money on the table by the door.
  وضعت قائمة المشتروات و بعض النقود على المنضدة بجوار الباب.
- Ramy arrived at the supermarket.
  وصل رامى إلى السوبر ماركت.
- He went home and got the list.
  عاد إلى المنزل وأحضر قائمة المشتروات.
- Then he ran back to the supermarket.
  ثم عاد جرى عائدا إلى السوبر ماركت.
- Ramy put the groceries in the trolley.
  وضع رامى سلع البقالة فى عربة المشتروات.
- Then he went to the checkout.
  ثم ذهب إلى مكان الدفع فى السوبر ماركت.
- He ran home, got the money, and ran back to the supermarket.
  جرى عائدا إلى المنزل وأحضر النقود وجرى عائدا إلى السوبر ماركت.
- Then he paid for the groceries and went home.
  ثم دفع ثمن المشتروات و عاد إلى المنزل.



A Listen and read along:

استمع واقرأ:

Ramy Forgot!

"Ramy," said his mother, "Will you go to the supermarket for me, please?" She put a grocery list and some money on the table by the door.

"No problem, Mum," said Ramy.



Ramy arrived at the supermarket.

"Oh, no!" Ramy said. "I forgot the list!" He went home and got the list. Then he ran back to the supermarket. Ramy put the groceries in the trolley. Then he went to the checkout.

"Oh, no!" he said. "I forgot the money!" He ran home, got the money, and ran back to the supermarket. Then he paid for the groceries and went home.

"Hi, Ramy," said his mother. "Where are the groceries?"

"Oh, no!" he said. "I left them at the supermarket!"

New Words

supermarket	grocery list
arrive	forget → forgot
go home	get → got
trolley	checkout
pay → paid	leave → left

B Listen and circle (True) or (False):

	True	False
1. Ramy went to the supermarket with his mother.		
2. Ramy ran to the bookstore.		
3. Ramy forgot the money.		
4. Ramy didn't pay for the groceries.		

(C) Read the question. Write the answer:

اقرأ السؤال واكتب الإجابة:

1- Where did Ramy go?

He went to the supermarket.

2- Who wanted Ramy to go?

....

3- Did Ramy forget the list?

....

4- What did Ramy leave at the supermarket?

....

Workbook

(A) Read:





Sally Remembered

"Sally," said her father, "Will you go to the supermarket for me, please?" "No problem, Dad," said Sally. She wrote the grocery list and took the money with her. She walked to the supermarket. Sally put the groceries in the basket. Then she went to the checkout line. She went back home in a short time.



(B) Read the question. Write the answer:

1- What did Sally write?

....

2- Why did Sally go to the supermarket?

....

3- Where did Sally put the groceries?

....





1. **pay for** يدفع ثمن شىء

- Ramy paid for the groceries.

2. **arrive in** (مكان كبير) يصل إلى / **arrive at** (مكان صغير) يصل إلى

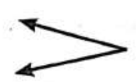
- They arrived in Cairo yesterday. • Ramy arrived at the supermarket.

3. **in the trolley** داخل عربة المشتراوات / **on the table** على المنضدة

- He put the groceries in the trolley.
- She put some money on the table.

4. **by**





– نستخدم by بمعنى: بالقرب من / جانب ، بواسطة / بـ

- I saw my teacher by the bank yesterday.
- I watched the film by myself.

5. **for** من أجل + **noun** اسم

Sally went to the supermarket for her dad.



(A) Listen and answer the questions: استمع وأجب عن الأسئلة.

1- Did you do the laundry on Tuesday?

....

2- Did you wash your hair this morning?

....

3- Will you eat breakfast by yourself tomorrow?

....

4- Are you going to school by yourself tomorrow?

....

5- Can you chop vegetables by yourself?

....

(B) Pair work. What can you do by yourself? Write. Then ask your partner:

ماذا تستطيع أن تفعل بمفردك؟ اكتب ثم اسأل زميلك.

You	Your Partner
1-	1-
2-	2-
3-	3-
4-	4-

(C) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1- I'm going to the .... as I have a toothache.

a dentist b supermarket c grocer d nurse

2- I stayed .... on Friday as it was a holiday.

a park b office c work d home

3- I .... going to wash my hair tomorrow.

a do b is c am d are

4- I .... take the bus as I go on foot.

a do b don't c does d doesn't

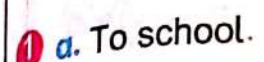
5- I buy my things .... myself.

a by b as c with d at

تدريبات

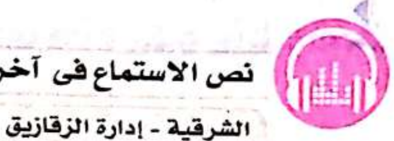
1 Listen and circle:


نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار



1. a. To school. b. To the supermarket.
2. a. On the table. b. In the trolley.
3. a. Who wanted Ramy to go? b. Who gave Ramy the money?
4. a. Did Ramy forget the list? b. Did Ramy forget the money?

2 Listen and complete:


نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

الشرقية - إدارة الزقازيق 2018

Noha : Good morning, Soha.

Soha : Good morning, Noha.

Noha : ① .... are you going?

Soha : To the ② ....

Noha : Why are you going ③ .... ?

Soha : To get some ④ .... for mum.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- Don't .... to take the money with you, Ali. (شمال سيناء - إدارة العريش 2016)

a) forget b) remember c) want d) pay

2- I go to the supermarket to buy .... (الدقهلية - إدارة أجا 2016)

a) laundry b) groceries c) trolley d) car

3- Ahmed put the groceries in the .... (أسوان - إدارة ادفو 2015)

a) bottle b) book c) trolley d) table

4- Hossam ran .... home when he forgot the money.

a) back b) out c) at d) from

5- Samy always forgets the grocery .... (القاهرة - إدارة الزيتون 2018)

a) test b) best c) list d) ball

6- I write down the groceries in a ....

ⓐ table ⓑ list ⓒ floor ⓓ menu

7- A .... is a big store where you can buy groceries.

ⓐ restaurant ⓑ supermarket
ⓒ bakery ⓓ library

8- My sister went to the grocer's to buy some .... 2016 الاسماعيلية - إدارة القصاصين

ⓐ cars ⓑ shirts ⓒ books ⓓ sugar

9- My father went to the .... to pay money.

ⓐ list ⓑ trolley ⓒ window ⓓ checkout

4 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one:

					Answer
1	Ali	Cairo	Ayman	Ashraf	....
2	bookstore	supermarket	left	grocer's	....
3	mother	father	trolley	brother	....
4	by	at	for	list	....
5	take	ran	went	forgot	....

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

2019 الاسكندرية - إدارة المنتزة

My sister Sarah always forgets things. One day her mum asked her to go to the bookshop to buy a notebook, a ruler and a pencil. The bookshop was near the house. Mum gave her the money. Sarah put the money on the table near the door and went to answer the phone. Then she ran to the bookshop. She bought a blue notebook, a ruler and a pencil. She went to pay for them. She found out that she forgot the money.

A- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1- Sarah put the money on the ....

ⓐ bag ⓑ bin ⓒ table ⓓ street

2- Sarah's mum asked her to go to the ....

ⓐ school ⓑ bookshop ⓒ supermarket ⓓ park

B- Answer the following questions:

3- What did Sarah's mum ask her to buy?

....

4- Where was the bookshop?

....

6 Write a paragraph of SEVEN (7) sentences:

"Ramy forgot things"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1- home - the money - ran - He - get - to - back. 2015 أسوان - إدارة إدفو

....

2- bought - by - He - groceries - himself - the. 2015 الإسكندرية - إدارة المنتزة

....

3- Ramy - the - Did - list - forget? 2018 أسوان - إدارة أسوان

....

4- home - the list - Yesterday. - he - forgot - at. 2018 الغربية - إدارة بسيون

....

8 Punctuate the following:

1- What did Ramy s mother ask him to do 2016 الجيزة - إدارة ٦ أكتوبر

....

2- nagwa and Heba didn t buy groceries.

....







Vocabulary مفردات

Daily Activities أنشطة يومية

walk to school	يمشى إلى المدرسة	slice fruit	يقطع الفواكة إلى شرائح
do laundry	يقوم بغسل الملابس	wash my hair	اغسل شعرى
go to the dentist	يذهب إلى طبيب الأسنان	take a bus	يركب أتوبيس
chop vegetables	يقطع الخضراوات	buy groceries	يشترى سلع البقالة
iron a shirt	يكوى قميص	stay home	يبقى بالمنزل

Kinds of pies أنواع الفطائر

lemon pie	فطيرة ليمون	apple pie	فطيرة تفاح
peach pie	فطيرة خوخ	cherry pie	فطيرة كريز

Other words كلمات أخرى

bakery	مخبز	bookstore	مكتبة بيع للكتب
baker	خباز	supermarket	سوبر ماركت
checkout	مكان الدفع فى سوبر ماركت	trolley	ترولى
What kinds?	ما أنواع؟	groceries	سلع البقالة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past ماضٍ
chop	يقطع	chopped
iron	يكوى الملابس	ironed
slice	يقطع إلى شرائح	sliced
stay	يبقى / يمكث	stayed
wash	يغسل	washed
walk	يمشى	walked

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past ماضٍ
get	يحضر / يحصل على	got
buy	يشترى	bought
forget	ينسى	forgot
run back	يرى عائداً	ran back
pay	يدفع (مالاً)	paid (money)






1 Reflexive pronouns الضمائر المنعكسة (التوكيدية)

• تستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة للتأكيد على من قام بالفعل وأنه قام به بمفرده ودون مساعدة أحد :

ضمائر الفاعل	الضمائر التوكيدية	ضمائر الفاعل		الضمائر التوكيدية (المنعكسة)
I	myself	You	أنت	yourself
He	himself	You	أنتم	yourselves
She	herself	We	نحن	ourselves
It	itself	They	هم / هن	themselves

2 The Past Simple زمن الماضي البسيط

١– يعبر زمن الماضى البسيط عن شيء بدأ وانتهى فى الماضى.

٢– يتكون زمن الماضى البسيط بإضافة d أو ed لمصدر الأفعال المنتظمة regular verbs :

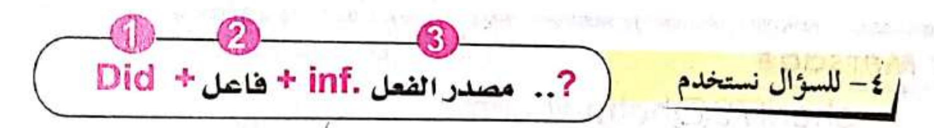
• وهناك أفعال غير منتظمة irregular verbs تحفظ كما هى :

٣– غالبًا ما يستخدم زمن الماضى البسيط مع الكلمات الآتية:

yesterday أمس - once ذات مرة - (a week - two years) ago منذ

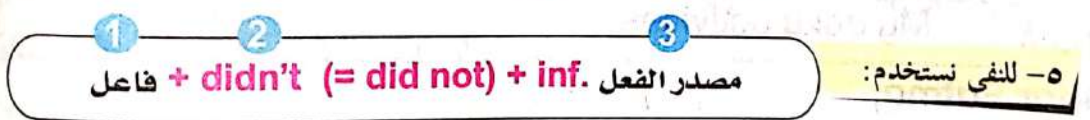
[last الماضي (week - month - year)] - in 1998 (سنة ماضية)

٤– للسؤال نستخدم



• Did she chop the vegetables? Yes, she did. / No, she didn't.

٥– للنفى نستخدم:



• I didn't walk to school by myself.

3 going to

• تستخدم "going to" بمعنى "سوف" للتعبير عن فعل مخطط له فى المستقبل :

1 2 3 4
فاعل + am / is / are + going to + inf. مصدر الفعل

• I'm going to wash my hair at 9:15.
• She's going to iron her shirts at 4 o'clock.



1 **Write a paragraph of SEVEN (7) sentences:**

"Activities we did yesterday"

A I stayed home yesterday. We did a lot of activities. I did the laundry. My mother sliced fruit. She ironed a shirt. My sister bought groceries. My brother chopped vegetables.

"I forgot the list"

B My Mother wanted me to buy groceries. She wrote the groceries in a list. I took the list and went to the supermarket. I bought the groceries and went to the checkout. I forgot the money. I ran home and got the money. I got the groceries and ran home.

2 **Write an email to your friend Sherif to tell him about your daily activities. Your name is Omar and your email address is omar38@yahoo.com and your friend's email address is sherif 76@hotmail.com.**

New Message

To	sherif76@hotmail.com (Cc Bcc)
From	omar38@yahoo.com
Subject	My daily activities

Dear Fatma,

How are you? I hope you are fine. I want to tell you about my daily activities. In the morning, I take the bus to school. I go back gome at two o'clock. I slice fruit in the afternoon. I chop vegetables, too. In the evening, I wash my hair. Then, I do my homework at nine o'clock.

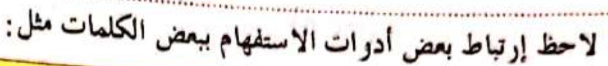
Please write soon.

Yours,

Omar

3 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

◀ نقدم في هذه الفقرة ارشادات لحل سؤال ترتيب الكلمات :



١ لاحظ إرتباط بعض أدوات الاستفهام ببعض الكلمات مثل:

- How (many - much - old - often)
- What (time - subject - kinds - colour)

- the - much - are - How - pies?
- How much are the pies?



يلاحظ التلميذ أن الضمائر المنعكسة (التوكيدية) تسبق بـ حرف الجر (by)

- a - ironed - by - I - shirt - myself.
- I ironed a shirt by myself.



لابد من التأكد من حفظ بعض الأفعال والأسماء التى تأتى معاً:

- chop vegetables - slice fruit - have lunch - do laundry

1- chopped - by - He - vegetables - himself.
   - He chopped vegetables by himself.

2- by - fruit - sliced - She - herself
   - She sliced fruit by herself.

Exercises:

أجب عن الجمل الآتية (بدون خط تحت الكلمة)

1- laundry - She - herself - did - by - the.

....

2- herself - Heba - home - by - stayed .

....

3- any - Do - cherry - have - you - pies?

....

4- out - we're - of - Sorry, - water.

....

5- groceries - I - on - buy - Sunday.

....

6- cost - pie - does - the - much - How?

....



١ لاحظ نطق كلمة (laundry)

حيث لاينطق حرفى (au) مثل حرفى (ou) فى كلمة loud لكن ينطقا مثل حرفى al كما فى كلمتى fall / talk

٢ لاحظ ايضا كلمة (iron)

حيث ينطق حرف (i) مثل حرف (i) فى كلمة kite كما لو كان "ai" ولا ننطق حرف o مثل "short "o لكن ينطق مثل حرف "o" فى كلمة second

٣ انطق كلمة pay مثل كلمة day

مع اختلاف أول حرف وفى الماضى paid نفس نطق pay مع اضافة d لكن كلمة said تختلف فى النطق عن paid حيث تنطق مثل كلمة bed مع اختلاف أول حرف

٤ لاحظ نطق كلمة (foot)

حيث ينطقا حرفى (oo) كما فى كلمة book وليس كما فى كلمة moon

٥ لاحظ نطق كلمة walk

أن حرف l لاينطق وأن حرف a ينطق o كما فى كلمة talk

٦ لاحظ أن حرف c

فى كلمة slice ينطق s لأن جاء بعده حرف e حيث أن حرف c ينطق مثل حرف s إذا جاء بعده e,i,y

1 Listen and circle:



نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

1. a. We have rice, salad and fried fish. b. We have lemon, peach and apple.
   2017 المنوفية - إدارة قويسنا
2. a. I watched TV yesterday. b. I ironed my clothes yesterday.
   2016 مطروح - إدارة سيوة
3. a. How much are the pies? b. How much are the loaves?
   2017 الغربية - إدارة السنطة
4. a. Who helped you wash your hair? b. Who helped you do the homework?
   2017 البحيرة - إدارة ايتاى

2 Listen and complete:

نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

2015 المنيا - إدارة العدوة

Ahmed : Good morning. What kinds of pies do you have?

Basem : We have lemon, ❶ .... and apple pies.

Ahmed : How ❷ .... are the apple pies?

Basem : They're ❸ .... pounds each.

Ahmed : Okay. May I ❹ .... one?

Basem : Great! I'll get you one apple pie.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- How .... does an apple pie cost? 2015 الاسكندرية - إدارة المنتزة

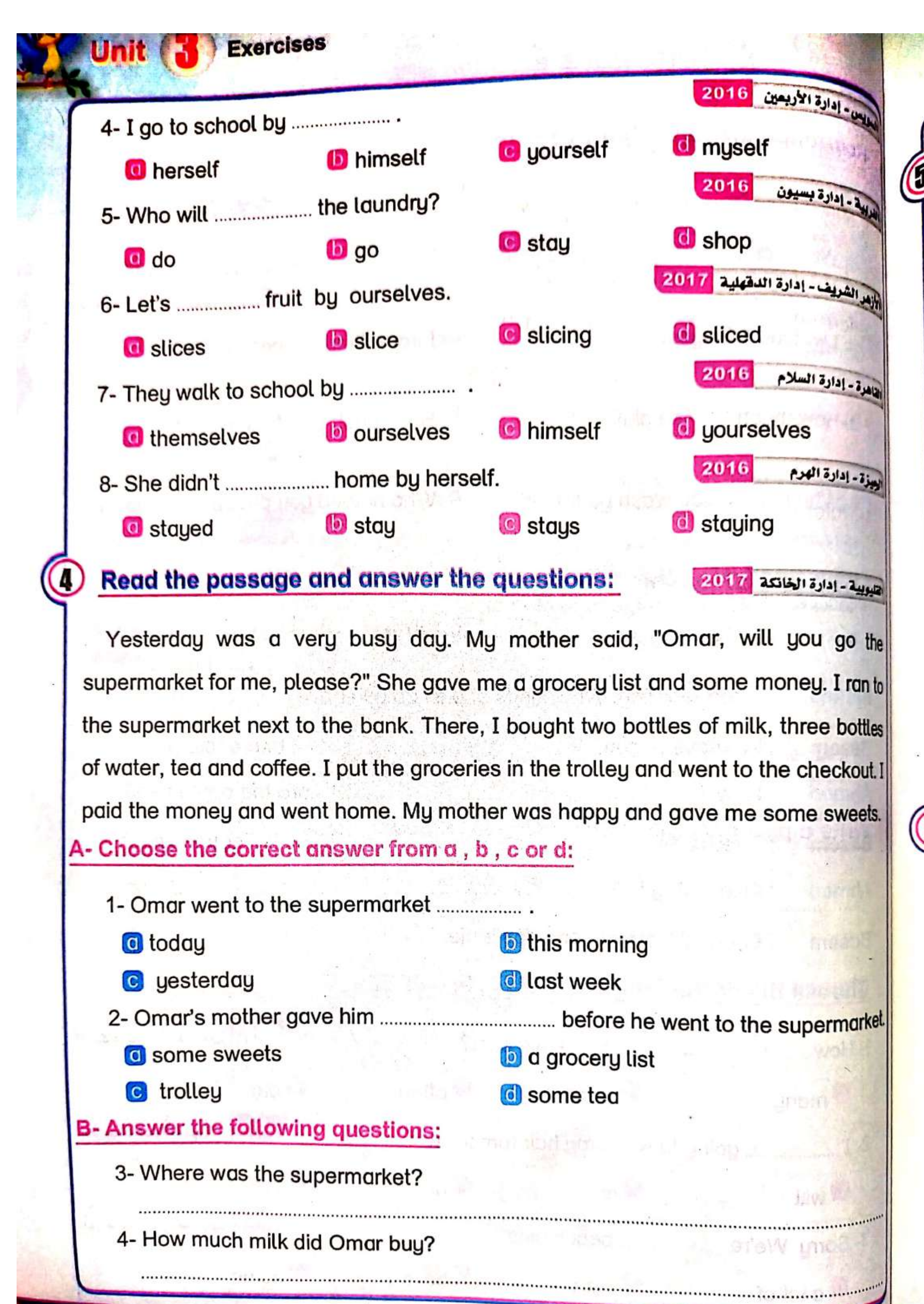
a many b much c often d old

2- I .... going to wash my hair tomorrow. 2016 الغربية - إدارة دمنهور

a will b is c am d are

3- Sorry. We're .... peach pies. 2016 بورسعيد - إدارة بورسعيد

a a lot of b out of c have d some



السويس - إدارة الأربعين 2016

4- I go to school by ....

ⓐ herself ⓑ himself ⓒ yourself ⓓ myself

الغربية - إدارة بسيون 2016

5- Who will .... the laundry?

ⓐ do ⓑ go ⓒ stay ⓓ shop

الأزهر الشريف - إدارة الدقهلية 2017

6- Let's .... fruit by ourselves.

ⓐ slices ⓑ slice ⓒ slicing ⓓ sliced

القاهرة - إدارة السلام 2016

7- They walk to school by ....

ⓐ themselves ⓑ ourselves ⓒ himself ⓓ yourselves

الجيزة - إدارة الهرم 2016

8- She didn't .... home by herself.

ⓐ stayed ⓑ stay ⓒ stays ⓓ staying

4 Read the passage and answer the questions:

القليوبية - إدارة الخانكة 2017

Yesterday was a very busy day. My mother said, "Omar, will you go the supermarket for me, please?" She gave me a grocery list and some money. I ran to the supermarket next to the bank. There, I bought two bottles of milk, three bottles of water, tea and coffee. I put the groceries in the trolley and went to the checkout. I paid the money and went home. My mother was happy and gave me some sweets.

A- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1- Omar went to the supermarket ....

ⓐ today ⓑ this morning
ⓒ yesterday ⓓ last week

2- Omar's mother gave him .... before he went to the supermarket.

ⓐ some sweets ⓑ a grocery list
ⓒ trolley ⓓ some tea

B- Answer the following questions:

3- Where was the supermarket?

....

4- How much milk did Omar buy?

....

5 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1- you - any - Do - pies - cherry - have? الشرقية - إدارة الزقازيق 2016

....

2- laundry - She - herself - did - by - the. القاهرة - إدارة الشرابية 2015

....

3- buy - by - my - I - myself - things. المنوفية - إدارة أشمون 2016

....

4- water - We're - of - out. الأزهر الشريف - إدارة سوهاج 2017

....

5- to - Will - the - go - supermarket - you? الفيوم - إدارة يوسف الصديق 2020

....

6- I - Where - money - can - pay? سوهاج - إدارة جرجا 2020

....

6 Write a paragraph of SEVEN (7) sentences:

"My school"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



1 Listen and circle:


نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

1. a. They're five pounds each. b. They're ten pounds each. 2015 السويس - إدارة السويس
2. a. Sorry, we're out of cherry. b. Sorry, we're out of apples. 2018 الدقهلية - إدارة شربين
3. a. Did you stay at home? b. Did you take the bus?
4. a. Do you have any cherry pies? b. Do you have any apple pies?

2 Listen and complete:


نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

2015 الأقصر - إدارة الأقصر

A : Good morning. Can I help you?
B : ❶ ...., please. What kinds of pies do you have today?
A : We have lemon, peach and ❷ ....
B : How ❸ .... are they?
A : They're ten pounds each.
B : OK. I'll ❹ .... one.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- We are .... of apple. 2020 الجيزة - إدارة أطفيح
a on b up c out d at

2- I write the grocery .... to buy what I need.
a checkout b trolley c supermarket d list

3- My friend took the photo by ....
a themselves b himself c itself d yourself

4- Ahmed and Tamer are my friends. I like .... so much. 2018 كفر الشيخ - إدارة الرياض
a them b him c themselves d us

5- Do the laundry by .... 2018 الاسكندرية - إدارة العجمى
a herself b yourself c themselves d ourselves

6- Eman .... laundry for her mum every week. 2016 القليوبية - إدارة قليوب

a does b makes c slices d draws

7- I am going to the .... as I have a toothache. 2019 الدقهلية - إدارة غرب المنصورة

a farmer b dentist
c driver d pilot

8- We go to school by .... 2019 المنوفية - إدارة تلا

a myself b ourselves c himself d yourselves

4 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one:

				Answer
1 yourself	her	itself	myself	....
2 chop	bought	washed	ironed	....
3 took	walk	ran	saw	....
4 themselves	ourselves	their	himself	....
5 wear	go	wash	what	....

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

2018 القاهرة - إدارة السلام

Friday is a holiday for all people except my mum. It's a busy day for her. She stays at home and does a lot of things. We help her. She does the laundry and irons shirts. My father goes to the supermarket to buy groceries. My sister Mona chops vegetables and slices fruit. I feed the birds. We have lunch at home. In the evening, we watch TV.

A- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1- They have lunch ....

a in a restaurant b at home c outside d in a café

2- They .... in the evening.

a iron shirts b do laundry c slice fruit d watch TV

B- Answer the following questions:

3- Who slices the fruit?

....

4- Where does your father go?

....

6 Write an email of SEVEN (7) sentences:

Write an email to your friend Ali who lives in Cairo to tell him about your visit to a supermarket in your town. Your name is Samy and your email address is samy39@yahoo.com and your friend's email address is ali53@hotmail.com.

New Message

To .... Cc Bcc

From ....

Subject ....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1- chopped - by - himself - He - vegetables. 2018 الجيزة - إدارة ٦ اكتوبر

....

2- cookie - is - the - much - lemon - How?

....

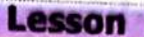
8 Punctuate the following:

1- I m going to go to the dentist on Sunday

....

2- Did you iron clothes Eman

....

Unit 3   Listening materials

Exercises Lesson 1

1 Listen and circle:

1- How about these cookies? - They are very nice.

2- How much are the pies? - They are ten pounds each.

3- Do you have any cherry pies? - Sorry, we're out of cherry.

4- How much is this pie? - Five pounds.

2 Listen and complete:

Huda : Good morning. Can I help you?

Noha : Yes, please. What kinds of pies do you have **today**?

Huda : We have lemon, peach and **apple**.

Noha : Do you have any cherry pies?

Huda : Sorry. We're out of cherry. But the apple pies are very nice.

Noha : How **much** are they?

Huda : They're ten pounds **each**.

Exercises Lesson 4

1 Listen and circle:

1- Where did you go? - To the supermarket.

2- Where are the groceries? - In the trolley.

3- Who wanted Ramy to go? - His father.

4- Did Ramy forget the list? - Yes, he did.

2 Listen and complete:

Noha : Good morning, Soha.

Soha : Good morning, Noha.

Noha : **Where** are you going?

Soha : To the **supermarket**.

Noha : Why are you going **there**?

Soha : To get some **groceries** for mum.





أسئلة مجمعة من اختبارات الاعوام السابقة

1 Listen and circle:

1- What kinds of pies do you have? - We have lemon, peach and apple.

2- What did you do yesterday? - I ironed my clothes yesterday.

3- How much are the pies? - They are five pounds each.

4- Who helped you wash your hair? - My mother did.

2 Listen and complete:

Ahmed : Good morning. What kinds of pies do you have?

Basem : We have lemon, peach and apple pies.

Ahmed : How much are the apple pies?

Basem : They're five pounds each.

Ahmed : Okay. May I get one?

Basem : Great! I'll get you one apple pie.

Test 4 Unit 3

1 Listen and circle:

1- How much are the pies? - They're ten pounds each.

2- Do you have any cherry pies? - Sorry, we are out of cherry.

3- Did you take the bus? - Yes, I did.

4- Do you have any apple pies? - Yes, I do.

2 Listen and complete:

A : Good morning. Can I help you?

B : Yes, please. What kinds of pies do you have today?

A : We have lemon, peach and cherry.

B : How much are they?

A : They're ten pounds each.

B : OK, I'll take one.

UNIT 4 Visiting a Film Studio

زيارة استوديو تصوير الافلام



Aims of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

Conversation Time Lesson 1 - SB: P. 19 /WB:P. 19

- make a telephone call
- إجراء اتصال تليفونى
- leave a message
- ترك رسالة
- identify speakers in a conversation
- التعرف على المتحدثين فى محادثة

Word Time Lesson 2 - SB: P.20 /WB:P. 20

- identify speakers in a conversation
- التعرف على المتحدثين فى محادثة
- read vocabulary activities at the studio
- قراءة مفردات لانشطة داخل استديو تصوير الافلام

Focus Time & Practice Time Lesson 3 - SB: P. 21-22/WB:P. 21-22

- use adverbs of frequency (always, usually, often, sometimes, hardly ever, and never)
- استخدام ظروف التكرار
- Yes / No questions with (Do / Does)
- السؤال بـ(هل...؟) باستخدام (Do / Does)
- exchange information about the frequency of activities in the present
- تبادل معلومات عن تكرار الأنشطة فى زمن المضارع

Reading Time & Your Time Lesson 4 - SB: P. 23-24 /WB:P. 23-24

- read a postcard
- قراءة بطاقة بريدية
- know vocabulary activities
- معرفة مفردات الانشطة



Conversation Time

وقت المحادثة

SB Page: 19 • WB Page: 19



Vocabulary مفردات

studio	استوديو	in	بالداخل
Hello	أهلا	be back	يرجع / يعود
message	رسالة	late	متأخر
lunch	الغداء	today	اليوم
thanks	شكرًا	Okay.	حسنًا.
Can / May ...?	هل من الممكن أن . . . ؟	call (ed)	يتصل تليفونيًا

Expressions تعبيرات

*right now	الآن / حالا	I'm sorry.	أنا آسف .
*I don't know.	لا أعرف .	You're welcome.	على الرحب ./عفوًا.
Who's calling?	من المتصل؟	What time? = When?	ما الوقت؟
Got it.	فهمت / وصلت (الرسالة).	*Sure.	بالتأكيد./ بالطبع

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past ماضي
leave	يترك	left
give	يعطى	gave
speak	يتحدث	spoke
get	يحصل على	got

Present	مضارع	Past ماضي
see	يرى	saw
take	يأخذ	took
know	يعرف	knew



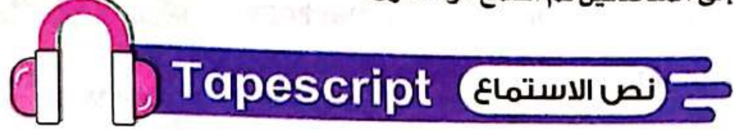
Read and learn اقرأ وتعلم

- May I speak to Ahmed, please? — هل ممكن أن أتحدث إلى أحمد، من فضلك؟
- He's not in right now. — هو غير موجود الآن.
- What time will he be back? — ما الوقت الذي سيعود فيه؟
- I'm sorry. I don't know. — آسف . لا أعرف .
- Can you take a message? — هل يمكنك أن توصل له رسالة؟

Sure. Who's calling?	بالتأكيد. من المتصل؟
I'm going to be late for lunch today.	سأتأخر على وجبة الغداء اليوم.
Got it. What's your number?	فهمت الرسالة. ما هو رقمك؟
Okay. I'll give him your message.	حسنا. سأبلغه رسالتك.

(A) Listen and repeat. Point to the speakers. Then listen again.

استمع وردد. قم بالإشارة إلى المتحدثين ثم استمع مرة أخرى.



(1)

Man : Hello!

Woman : Hello. May I speak to Ahmed, please?

Man : He's not in right now.



(2)

Woman : What time will he be back?

Man : I'm sorry. I don't know.



(3)

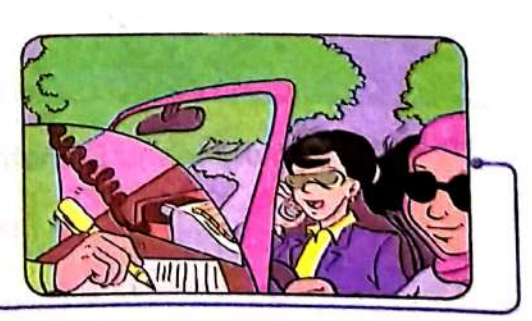
Woman : Can you take a message?

Man : Sure. Who's calling?



(4)

Woman : This is Salwa Kamel. I'm going to be late for lunch today. I'll see him at 1:00.



5



Man : Got it. What's your number?

Woman : 35551839.

6



Man : Okay. I'll give him your message.

Woman : Thanks.

Man : You're welcome.

B Role-play the conversation: يقوم التلاميذ بتمثيل المحادثة معاً.

Grammar
قواعد لغوية

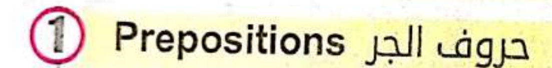
1 Prepositions حروف الجر

1 at + الساعة : 2 speak to يتحدث إلى 3 be late for يتأخر عن

- She will be back at 7 o'clock.
- May I speak to Fatma?
- She'll be late for dinner.

4 in → prep. حرف جر بمعنى فى
in → adverb ظرف مكان بمعنى بالداخل

- The kite is in the cupboard.
- My father is not in.



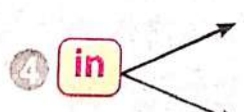
2 Future simple زمن المستقبل البسيط



- يمكن التعبير عن المستقبل البسيط بطريقتين :

will (='ll) + inf. مصدر الفعل

- I'll see my friend Sameh tomorrow.



am / is / are + going to + inf. مصدر الفعل

- I'm going to be late for lunch today.



3 What time? ما الوقت؟ = When? متى؟

- What time will he be back? = When will he be back?

4 May / Can / Will?

- لاحظ عند استخدام هذه الأفعال الناقصة في السؤال يأتي بعدها مصدر الفعل دائما.

May / Can / Will + فاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل?

- May I speak to Seif, please?

Language Functions وظائف لغوية

1 Polite request : • طلب مهذب :

- May I speak to Ahmed, please? هل من الممكن أن أتحدث إلى أحمد، من فضلك؟
- He's not in right now. إنه ليس هنا الآن.

Or • Sure. Hold on. أو: بالتأكيد انتظر على الخط.

2 Asking about someone on the phone : • السؤال عن شخص ما في التليفون :

A : Who's calling? من المتصل؟

B : This is Salwa Kamel. (تقديم الشخص لنفسه في المحادثة الهاتفية)

A : What's your number? السؤال عن رقم شخص في التليفون نقول: ما هو رقم تليفونك؟

B : 35551839.

3 Leaving a message : • ترك رسالة :

A : Can you take a message? أيمكنك أخذ رسالة؟

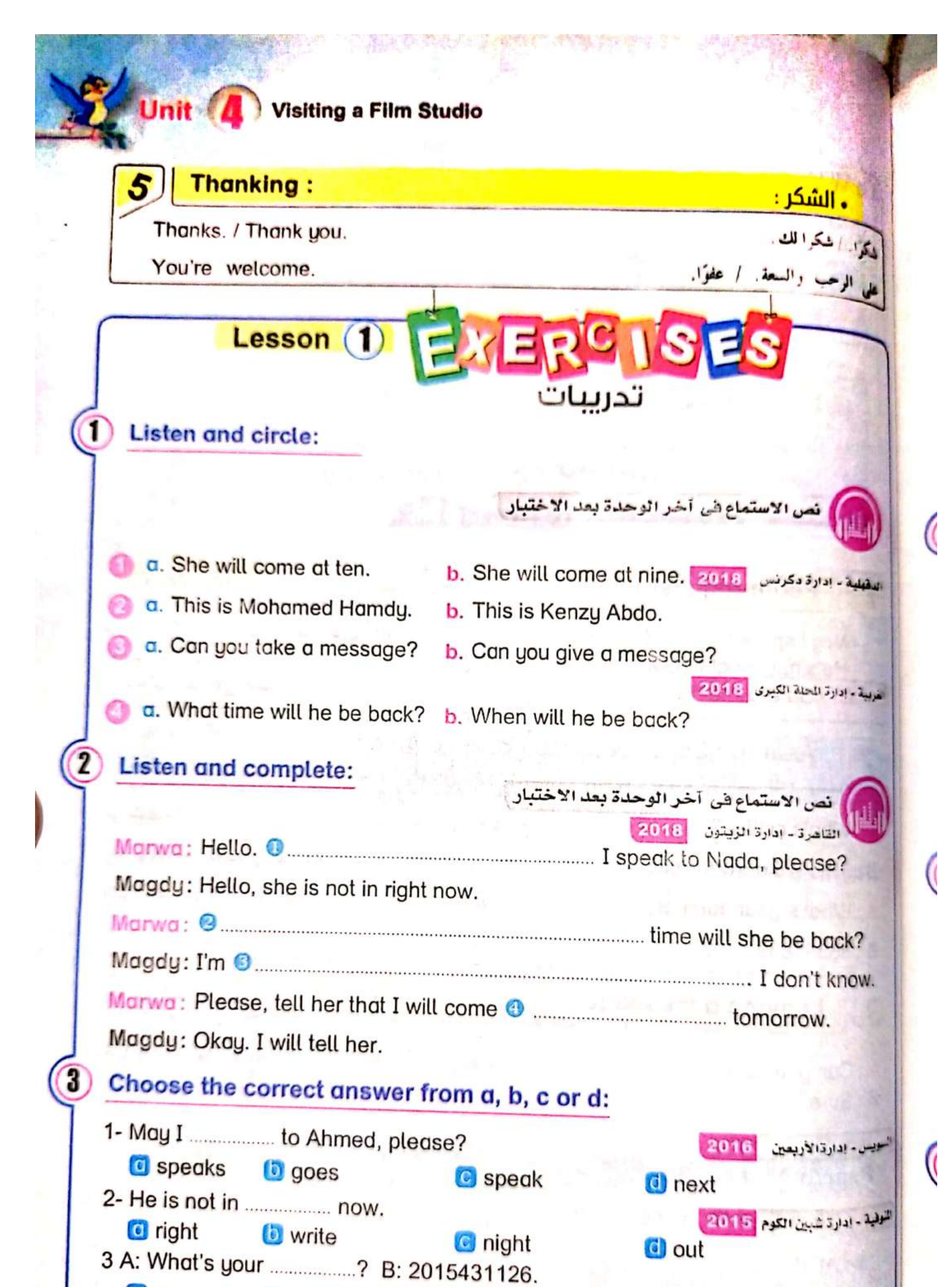
B : Sure. بالتأكيد.

4 Asking about time : • السؤال عن الوقت.

A : What time will he be back? ما الوقت الذى سيعود فيه؟

B : At 10 o'clock. الساعة العاشرة.

A : I'm sorry. I don't know. آسف. لا أعرف.



5 Thanking :

• الشكر :

Thanks. / Thank you. — شكراً / شكراً لك.

You're welcome. — على الرحب والسعة. / عفواً.

Lesson 1 EXERCISES تدريبات

1 Listen and circle:

نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

1. a. She will come at ten. b. She will come at nine. 2018 الدقهلية - إدارة دكرنس
2. a. This is Mohamed Hamdy. b. This is Kenzy Abdo.
3. a. Can you take a message? b. Can you give a message?

2018 الغربية - إدارة المحلة الكبرى

4. a. What time will he be back? b. When will he be back?

2 Listen and complete:

نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

2018 القاهرة - إدارة الزيتون

Marwa: Hello. ❶ .... I speak to Nada, please?

Magdy: Hello, she is not in right now.

Marwa: ❷ .... time will she be back?

Magdy: I'm ❸ .... I don't know.

Marwa: Please, tell her that I will come ❹ .... tomorrow.

Magdy: Okay. I will tell her.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- May I .... to Ahmed, please? 2016 السويس - إدارة الأربعين

a speaks b goes c speak d next

2- He is not in .... now. 2015 المنوفية - إدارة شبين الكوم

a right b write c night d out

3 A: What's your ....? B: 2015431126.

a name b number c job d address

4- A: Who's calling ? B: .... Mohamed Mohie.
ⓐ There is ⓑ You are ⓒ They are ⓓ This is

5- We .... be back after two hours.
ⓐ will ⓑ are ⓒ does ⓓ did

6- .... time will he be back? 2018 كفر الشيخ - إدارة فوة
ⓐ How ⓑ What ⓒ Who ⓓ Where

7- Can you .... a message? 2015 الاقصر - إدارة الأقصر
ⓐ speak ⓑ buy ⓒ take ⓓ do

8- What .... will he be back? 2019 الاسماعيلية - إدارة القصاصين
ⓐ age ⓑ time ⓒ long ⓓ hour

4 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one:

					Answer
1	late	sorry	lunch	happy	....
2	Ahmed	Salwa	Kamel	Sherif	....
3	in	at	for	today	....
4	studio	where	what	who	....
5	took	gave	see	knew	....

5 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1- in - not - He - right - is - now.

....

2- speak - May - I - Dalia - to - ,please? 2016 الجيزة - إدارة الصف

....

3- give - your - will - number - him - I. 2015 البحر الأحمر - إدارة الغردقة

....

4- telephone - your - number - What's? 2018 سوهاج - إدارة ساقلتة

....

6 Punctuate the following:

1- does Ahmed talk to Noha 2016 الجيزة - إدارة أطفيح

....

2- heba and Nabil aren t in right now.

....

Word Time

وقت الكلمات

SB Page: 20 • WB Page: 20

Activities أنشطة



* wear a wig يرتدى باروكة	drive a sports car يقود سيارة رياضية
put on make-up يضع ماكياج (مستحضرات تجميل)	make friends يكون صداقات
	
get a sunburn يصاب بحروق الشمس	listen to music يستمع إلى الموسيقي
	
take a nap يأخذ غفوة	* talk on the phone يتحدث في التليفون





* sign autographs يوقع أوتوجرافات	* have an accident يتعرض لحادث



Vocabulary مفردات

bottle of water	زجاجة مياه	lemonade	عصير ليمون
chips	بطاطس شيبسي	(be) out of	نفد (لم يعد لديه)
actor	ممثل	tired	متعب

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
try	يحاول	tried
sign	يُوقع / يمضى (على ورقة)	signed
listen	يستمع	listened
talk	يتحدث	talked

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
put	يضع	put
wear	يرتدى	wore
drive	يقود سيارة	drove
get	يحصل على	got
take	يأخذ	took
make friends	يكون صداقات	made friends



A Listen and repeat:

استمع وردد:

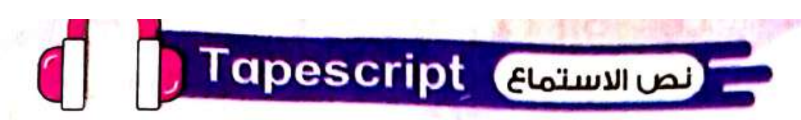
يستمع التلاميذ إلى الكلمات الآتية ويرددونها ثم يقومون بالإشارة إلى الصورة المعبرة عن كل كلمة.

1. wear a wig
2. drive a sports car
3. put on make-up
4. make friends
5. get a sunburn
6. listen to music
7. take a nap
8. talk on the phone
9. sign autographs
10. have an accident

AHRAM FILM STUDIOS

B Point and say the words:

أشر إلى الصور السابقة وقل الكلمات:



(C) Listen and point.

استمع وأشر .

• استمع وأشر إلى صور الأشخاص الذين يقومون بفعل الأنشطة بالصفحة السابقة.

- Take a nap.
- Put on make-up.
- Talk on the phone.
- Listen to music.
- Get a sunburn.
- Drive a sports car.
- Have an accident.
- Make friends.
- Wear a wig.
- Sign autographs.

• Now listen and point to the speakers.

• انظر إلى الصورة السابقة وأشر إلى المتحدثين.

1

A : I'll have a bottle of water, please.

B : Sorry. We're out of water. But the lemonade is very nice.

A : Okay. I'll take a can of lemonade and some chips.

2

A : Hello. May I speak to Dalia, please?

B : She's not in right now.

A : Oh! Can you take a message?

B : Sure.

3

A : Can you do it by yourself?

B : No, I can't.

A : Okay. I will do it for you.

Answers



1- (A man and a woman at refreshments table)

رجل وامرأة عند منضدة المرطبات

2- (A woman is talking on the phone)

سيدة تتحدث في التليفون.

3- (A man and an actor in make-up area)

رجل وممثل في منطقة الماكياج.



Lesson 2 EXERCISES تدريبات

1 Listen and complete:

نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

Maha : Hi, Rania. Where did you go yesterday?

Rania : I went to a film studio.

Maha : Who did you go ❶ ....?

Rania : With my friends.

Maha : What did the ❷ .... do?

Rania : They put on ❸ ....

Maha : When did you go home?

Rania : I went home ❹ .... the evening.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- He .... a nap. (2020 أسيوط - إدارة منفلوط)

a wore b put c took d did

2- He .... a sports car. (2018 الفيوم - إدارة أبشواى)

a drove b talked c wrote d signed

3- Osama gets a/an .... (2018 الدقهلية - إدارة طلخا)

a sunburn b autograph c music d sports

4- My sister doesn't .... on make-up. (2018 الشرقية - إدارة الزقازيق)

a wear b take c drive d put

5- Mr. Gamal drives a .... car. (2018 الاسكندرية - إدارة العجمى)

a sport b sporty c sporting d sports

6- The actors always .... a wig. (2018 الجيزة - إدارة أوسيم)

a stay b wear c slice d go

7- Mona likes to .... friends at her new school. (2018 المنوفية - إدارة قويسنا)

a speak b do c make d talk

8- We didn't .... an accident.

a drive b have c put d sign

9- He .... on the phone. 2016 القاهرة - إدارة المرج

ⓐ took ⓑ listened ⓒ talked ⓓ heard

10- Sandy .... to music. 2016 البحر الأحمر - إدارة مرسى علم

ⓐ had ⓑ listened ⓒ did ⓓ was

11- I'll take a .... because I'm tired. 2016 الدقهلية - إدارة [illegible]

ⓐ nap ⓑ wig ⓒ sunburn ⓓ autograph

3 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one:

					Answer
1	on	to	in	phone	....
2	had	accident	took	wore	....
3	bike	car	train	get	....
4	make	listen	tired	have	....
5	friend	father	mother	sister	....

4 Read the passage and answer the questions:

2015 الجيزة - إدارة البدرشين

I went to a film studio yesterday. I saw a man listening to music and people wearing wigs. One actor was signing autographs. The actor didn't put on make-up. There was a man taking a nap because he was tired. There was a woman trying to talk on the phone. So much to see there. It was fun.

A- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1- The film star was signing ....

ⓐ books ⓑ newspapers ⓒ autographs ⓓ letters

2- The people were .... wigs.

ⓐ driving ⓑ wearing ⓒ talking ⓓ getting

9- He .... on the phone. القاهرة - إدارة المرج 2016

(a) took (b) listened (c) talked (d) heard

10- Sandy .... to music. البحر الاحمر - إدارة مرسى علم 2016

(a) had (b) listened (c) did (d) was

11- I'll take a .... because I'm tired. المنوفية - ادارة تلا 2016

(a) nap (b) wig (c) sunburn (d) autograph

3 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one:

Answer

1	on	to	in	phone	....
2	had	accident	took	wore	....
3	bike	car	train	get	....
4	make	listen	tired	have	....
5	friend	father	mother	sister	....

4 Read the passage and answer the questions:

الجيزة - إدارة البدرشين 2015

I went to a film studio yesterday. I saw a man listening to music and people wearing wigs. One actor was signing autographs. The actor didn't put on make-up. There was a man taking a nap because he was tired. There was a woman trying to talk on the phone. So much to see there. It was fun.

A- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1- The film star was signing ....

(a) books (b) newspapers (c) autographs (d) letters

2- The people were .... wigs.

(a) driving (b) wearing (c) talking (d) getting

B- Answer the following questions:

3- Why did the man take a nap?

....

4- Where did you go yesterday?

....

5 Write a paragraph of SEVEN (7) sentences:

"Visiting a film studio"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1- phone - I - yesterday - the - on - talked. قنا - إدارة فرشوط 2016

....

2- signed - an - actor - An - autograph.

....

3- yesterday - Did - have - they - accident - an?

....

4- ever - make-up - Do - on - you - put? الغربية - إدارة شرق طنطا 2018

....

7 Punctuate the following:

1- What s Essam listening to

....

2- nour and Faten visited a film studio on thursday.

....

Lesson 3

Focus Time
Practice Time وقت التدريب

SB Pages: 21 - 22 • WB Pages: 21 - 22

Adverbs of frequency ظروف التكرار

A Listen and repeat: استمع وردد :



wear ⟶ wears	drive ⟶ drives	put ⟶ puts
make ⟶ makes	get ⟶ gets	listen ⟶ listens
talk ⟶ talks	sign ⟶ signs	take ⟶ takes
		have ⟶ has



Vocabulary مفردات

sunburn	حروق شمس (بسبب التعرض لاشعة الشمس)	ever	في أي وقت

B Listen and repeat: استمع وردد :

A: **Do** you ever listen to music?

B: Yes, **I always listen** to music.

C: Yes, **I usually listen** to music.

D: Yes, **I often listen** to music.

E: Yes, **I sometimes listen** to music.

F: No, **I hardly ever listen** to music.

G: No, **I never listen** to music.

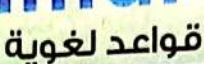
A. Does he ever listen to music?
B. Yes, he always listens to music.
C. Yes, he usually listens to music.
D. Yes, he often listens to music.
E. Yes, he sometimes listens to music.
F. No, he hardly ever listens to music.
G. No, he never listens to music.

C Look at page 20. Listen and point:

• انظر إلى الصورة فى صفحة ٢٠ بكتاب المدرسة ثم اشر إلى ما تسمعه.

A: Do they ever have an accident?
B: No, they hardly ever have an accident.
A: Does he ever sign autographs?
B: Yes, he often signs autographs.
A: Does he ever wear a wig?
B: Yes, he sometimes wears a wig.





1 Adverbs of frequency ظروف التكرار

• تستخدم ظروف التكرار للتعبير عن عدد مرات حدوث الفعل.

100%	always	She always wears a wig. هى دائما ترتدى باروكه. (طوال الوقت)
80%	usually	I usually puts on make-up. أنا عادة أضع مكياج. (فى أوقات كثيرة)
70%	often	They often listen to music. هم غالبًا يستمعون إلى الموسيقى. (فى أغلب الوقت)
50%	sometimes	We sometimes talk on the phone. نحن أحيانا نتحدث فى الهاتف. (نصف الوقت تقريبًا)
10%	hardly ever	He hardly ever has an accident. هو نادرا ما يتعرض إلى حادثة. (نادرًا ما يحدث ذلك)
0%	never	You never drive a sports car. أنت لم تقود سيارة رياضية أبدًا. (لم يحدث أبدا)

لاحظ الآتى
تأتى ظروف التكرار قبل الفعل الأساسى وبعد فعل يكون Verb to be.

• We sometimes go to the park.
• We are never late for school.

❶ ظرف التكرار → ❷ الفعل الأساسي

❶ verb to be فعل يكون → ❷ ظرف التكرار

Never × / Ever?

- تستخدم (ever) فى السؤال وتستخدم never لنفى الجملة.

Do you ever drive a sports car?
No, I don't. I never drive a sports car.

- تستخدم (always / usually / often / sometimes) غالبًا فى الإثبات لتدل على درجة تكرار الفعل (ويمكن أن يستخدموا فى النفى أيضًا).
- تستخدم (never / hardly ever) فى النفى لتوضيح أن الفعل لم يحدث أو نادرًا ما يحدث.

2 The Present Simple زمن المضارع البسيط

Form التكوين

- يتكون زمن المضارع البسيط كالآتى:

I / You / We / They / اسم جمع + inf. مصدر الفعل

He / She / It / اسم مفرد + verb + s / es / ies

- لاحظ الآتى: يضاف للفعل (es) لو انتهى بـ(ss/ ch / sh / o / x) مع (اسم مفرد / He / She / It):

cross	→	crosses	watch	→	watches
wash	→	washes	go	→	goes

- Ahmed always goes to school on Monday.

- إذا انتهى الفعل بـ حرف ساكن + y نحذف (y) ونضيف (ies):

carry	→	carries	study	→	studies

- She usually studies English at night.

– لكن توجد أفعال شاذة احفظها:

verb to be

am → (I)
is → (He / She / It)
are → (We / They / You)

verb to have

have → (I / We / You / They)
has → (He / She / It)

Negative النفى

- لنفى الفعل فى زمن المضارع البسيط نستخدم (don't / doesn't):

I / You / We / They / اسم جمع + don't (= do not) + inf.

He / She / It / اسم مفرد + doesn't (= does not) + inf.

- يمكن أيضا استخدام never لنفى الفعل مع ملاحظة بقاء الفعل مضاف له s مع اسم مفرد / He / She / It:

- I don't wear a wig.
- She doesn't wear a wig.
- She never wears a wig.

Question السؤال

• للسؤال فى زمن المضارع البسيط بمعنى "هل...؟" نستخدم **Do / Does**

Do + I / you / we / they / اسم جمع + inf. ?

Does + he / she / it / اسم مفرد + inf. ?

• Do you ever / usually get a sunburn?

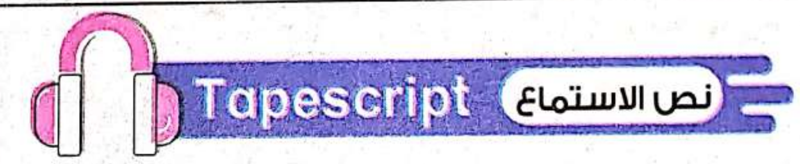
إجابة مختصرة: Yes, I do. (اثبات) / No, I don't. (نفى)

إجابة كاملة : • Yes, I always get a sunburn.

• Does he ever / always drive a sports car?

إجابة مختصرة: Yes, he does. (اثبات) / No, he doesn't. (نفى)

إجابة كاملة: • No, he never drives a sports car.



A Listen and repeat. Then practise with a partner:

• تدرب مع زميلك على السؤال بـ (Do/Does) والإجابة باستخدام ظروف التكرار.

Do you ever sign autographs? / **No, I hardly ever sign autographs.**







Do you ever listen to music?

Yes, I usually listen to music.



she / talk on the phone?
always



Does she ever talk on the phone?

Yes, she always talks on the phone.



3. Does he ever drive a sports car?

Yes, he often drives a sports car.



4. Do they ever have an accident?

No, they hardly ever have an accident.



5. Does he ever get a sunburn?

Yes, he always gets a sunburn.



6. Do you ever put on make-up?

No, I never put on make-up.



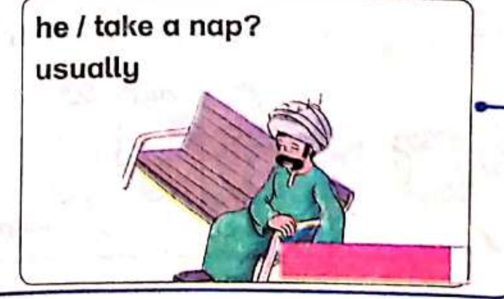
7. Does he ever wear a wig?

Yes, he sometimes wears a wig.



8. Does he ever take a nap?

Yes, he usually takes a nap.





B Look at page 20. Practise with a partner.

ينظر التلاميذ إلى صفحة ٢٠ بالكتاب المدرسي ثم يتدربون على المحادثة كما يلي:

S1: (pointing to the actor taking a nap):

يشير التلميذ الأول إلى الممثل الذى يأخذ غفوة ويقول:

Does he ever take a nap?

هل سبق وأخذ غفوة؟

S2: Yes, he always takes a nap.

ويجيب التلميذ الثاني حسب الصورة ويقول: نعم هو دائما يأخذ غفوة.



C Listen and chant:

استمع وغن:

• يستمع التلاميذ إلى أغنية (Do You Ever Drive a Sports Car?) ويرددونها:



The SONG



Do You Ever Drive a Sports Car?

Do you ever drive a sports car?

Yes, I often drive a sports car.

Do you ever have an accident?

No, I never have an accident.

Do you ever put on make-up?

Yes, I usually put on make-up.

Do you ever wear a wig?

No, I hardly ever wear a wig.

Do you ever talk on the phone?

Yes, I always talk on the phone.

Do you ever get a sunburn?

Yes, I sometimes get a sunburn.







1 Listen and complete:

نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

Faris : Do you ever drive a car?
Salma : Yes, I ❶ ....
Faris : Do you ever have an accident?
Salma : No, I ❷ .... have an accident.
Faris : Do you ❸ .... autographs?
Salma : Yes, I do.
Faris : Are you an ❹ ....?
Salma : Yes, I am.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- Does Omar ever .... an accident?
a has b having c had d have

2- They usually .... to music.
a listens b listening c listen d listened

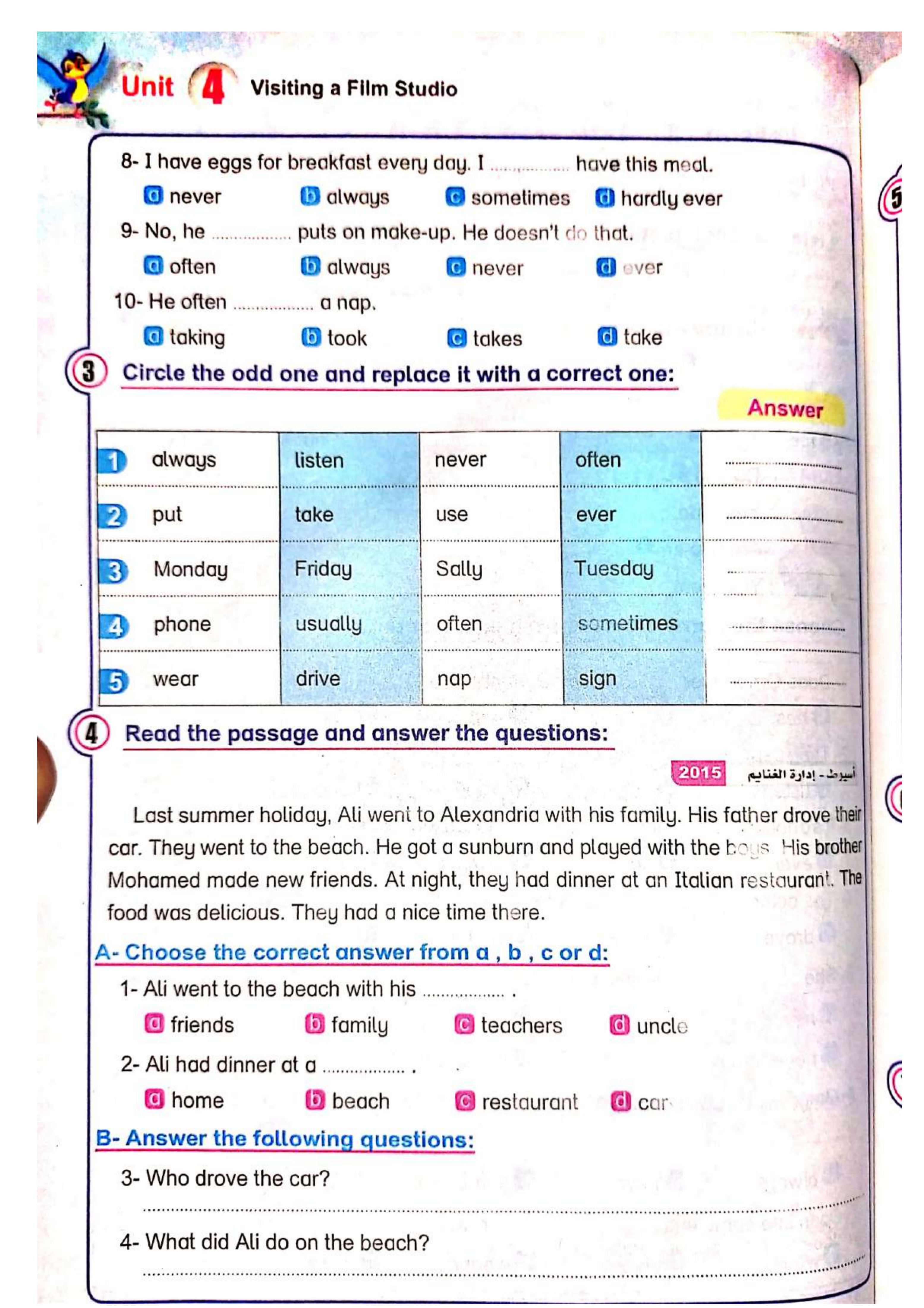
3- It's a holiday. Students .... go to school on Friday. 2018 الدقهلية - إدارة شربين
a every b never c always d usually

4- The actor .... autographs. 2018 أسيوط - إدارة البدارى
a drove b wore c signed d talked

5- She .... tennis at school. 2018 القليوبية - إدارة بنها
a never b plays never
c never plays d never play

6- Omar .... drives his father's car. He can't drive a car. 2018 الجيزة - إدارة أوسيم
a always b never c sometimes d often

7- Does she sometimes .... a wig? 2018 القاهرة - إدارة الشرابية
a wear b wears c wearing d wore



8- I have eggs for breakfast every day. I .... have this meal.

a never b always c sometimes d hardly ever

9- No, he .... puts on make-up. He doesn't do that.

a often b always c never d ever

10- He often .... a nap.

a taking b took c takes d take

3 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one:

Answer

1	always	listen	never	often	....
2	put	take	use	ever	....
3	Monday	Friday	Sally	Tuesday	....
4	phone	usually	often	sometimes	....
5	wear	drive	nap	sign	....

4 Read the passage and answer the questions:

2015 أسيوط - إدارة الغنايم

Last summer holiday, Ali went to Alexandria with his family. His father drove their car. They went to the beach. He got a sunburn and played with the boys. His brother Mohamed made new friends. At night, they had dinner at an Italian restaurant. The food was delicious. They had a nice time there.

A- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1- Ali went to the beach with his ....

a friends b family c teachers d uncle

2- Ali had dinner at a ....

a home b beach c restaurant d car

B- Answer the following questions:

3- Who drove the car?

....

4- What did Ali do on the beach?

....

5 Write an email of SEVEN (7) sentences:

Write an email to your friend Hatem to tell him about the film studio you visited on holiday. Your name is Osama and your email address is osama53@yahoo.com and your friend's email address is hatem33@hotmail.com.

New Message

To .... Cc Bcc

From ....

Subject ....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1- usually - a - Eman - rents - video.

....

2- ever - Does - she - talk - the phone - on?

....

3- sign - I - ever - autograph - hardly - an.

....

4- you - ever - Do - accident - an - have?

....

7 Punctuate the following:

1- Yes i always take a nap in the afternoon.

....

2- does Mariem put on make-up on Friday

....

Lesson 4

Reading Time Your Time

وقت القراءة

SB Pages: 23 - 24 • WB Pages: 23 - 24



Vocabulary مفردات

New Words كلمات جديدة

have a good time	يستمتع بوقته	family	أسرة
film studio	استوديو لتصوير الأفلام	adventure*	مغامرة
actor	ممثل	rehearse	يؤدى بروفة فيلم أو مسرحية
film star	نجم سينمائي	scene	مشهد في فيلم

Places أماكن

Alexandria	الإسكندرية	Alexandria Library	مكتبة الاسكندرية
Qaitbay Citadel	قلعة قايتباى	beach	شاطئ
restaurant	مطعم	Florida	ولاية فلوريدا
Disney World	عالم ديزني	Universal Studios	استوديوهات عالمية

Time وقت

yesterday	أمس	today	اليوم
afternoon	بعد الظهر	tonight*	الليلة

Adjectives صفات

fun	ممتع	cool	رائع
nice	لطيف		

Other words كلمات أخرى

all kinds of	كل أنواع من	dinner	عشاء
really	حقا / فعلا		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past ماضٍ
visit	يزور	visited
watch	يشاهد	watched
wait	ينتظر	waited
rehearse	يؤدى بروفة	rehearsed
talk to	يتحدث إلى	talked to

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past ماضٍ
meet	يقابل	met
say	يقول	said
make films	يصنع افلاما	made films





Read and learn اقرأ وتعلم

I'm having a good time in Alexandria with my family.	إنني استمتع / أقضي وقتًا ممتعًا في الإسكندرية مع عائلتي.
Today we visited Qaitbay Citadel.	زرنا قلعة قايتباي اليوم.
It was fun!	كانت ممتعة!
They make all kinds of films at this studio.	إنهم يصورون جميع أنواع الأفلام في هذا الأستوديو.
make an adventure film	يصور فيلم مغامرات
actors rehearse	الممثلون يقومون بعمل بروفة (يتمرن الممثلون على مسرحية أو فيلم قبل عرضها أمام الجمهور)
It was so cool!	كان رائع جدًا!
We're going to go to the beach tomorrow.	سنذهب إلى الشاطئ غدا.
I can't wait	لا أستطيع الانتظار.
Love,	.... بكل الحب من .. (تكتب في نهاية الخطاب)

(A) Listen and read along: استمع واقرأ:

Alexandria

To : eman@egy.com
From : mona@egy.com
Subject : Alexandria
Hi, Eman !

I'm having a good time in Alexandria with my family. We visited Alexandria Library yesterday. Today we visited Qaitbay Citadel. It was fun! In the afternoon, we went to a film studio. They make all kinds of films at this studio. Today they were making an adventure film. We watched the actors rehearse.

It was so cool! Then we talked to Ahmed El-Sakka (the film star). He's really nice.

Tonight we're going to eat dinner at a nice restaurant. We're going to go to the beach tomorrow. I can't wait! See you on Sunday!

Love,
Mona

New Words

have a good time	family
yesterday	today
film studio	adventure
actor	rehearse
film star	tonight

B Listen and circle (True) or (False):

	True	False
1 Mona was in Aswan.		
2 Mona went to the cinema.		
3 Mona talked to a film star.		
4 Mona went to Alexandria Library and Qaitbay Citadel.		

C Read the question. Write the answer:

1- Where is Mona having a good time?
In Alexandria.
2- What did she watch at the film studio? ....
3- Who did she talk to at the film studio? ....
4- When did she visit Qaitbay Citadel? ....

Workbook

A Read.

Hi, Kareem!
I'm having a good time in Florida! I visited Disney World yesterday. Today I visited Universal Studios, a film studio. They make all kinds of films. Today they were making an adventure film. I watched the actors rehearse a scene. Then I talked to Michael Stiles (the film star). I'm going to go to a water park tomorrow. I can't wait!
See you on Sunday!
Your friend,
Bill

B Read and circle True or False.

1 Bill visited Disney World today. True False
2 Bill met a film star. True False
3 Bill watched the actors rehearse at the water park. True False
4 They were making an adventure film at the studio. True False

C Read the question. Write the answer.

1- Where is Disney World? ....
2- Who is Michael Stiles? ....
3- Why did Bill say "I can't wait"? ....
4- When will Bill see Kareem? ....

Your Time

A Listen and answer the questions:

1- Do you ever sign autographs? ....
2- Do you ever talk on the phone? ....
3- Do your friends ever listen to music? ....
4- Do you ever drive a sports car? ....

B Pair work. Write. Then ask your partner. Do you ever take a nap?

	You	Your Partner
1- take a nap		
2- wear a wig		
3- listen to music		
4- talk on the phone		

always
often
sometimes
hardly ever
never
usually

C Review. Read and write the answers

1- Do you ever see a film by yourself? ....
2- Do you and your friends ever go to the beach? ....
3- What did you do yesterday? ....
4- What are you going to do tomorrow? ....



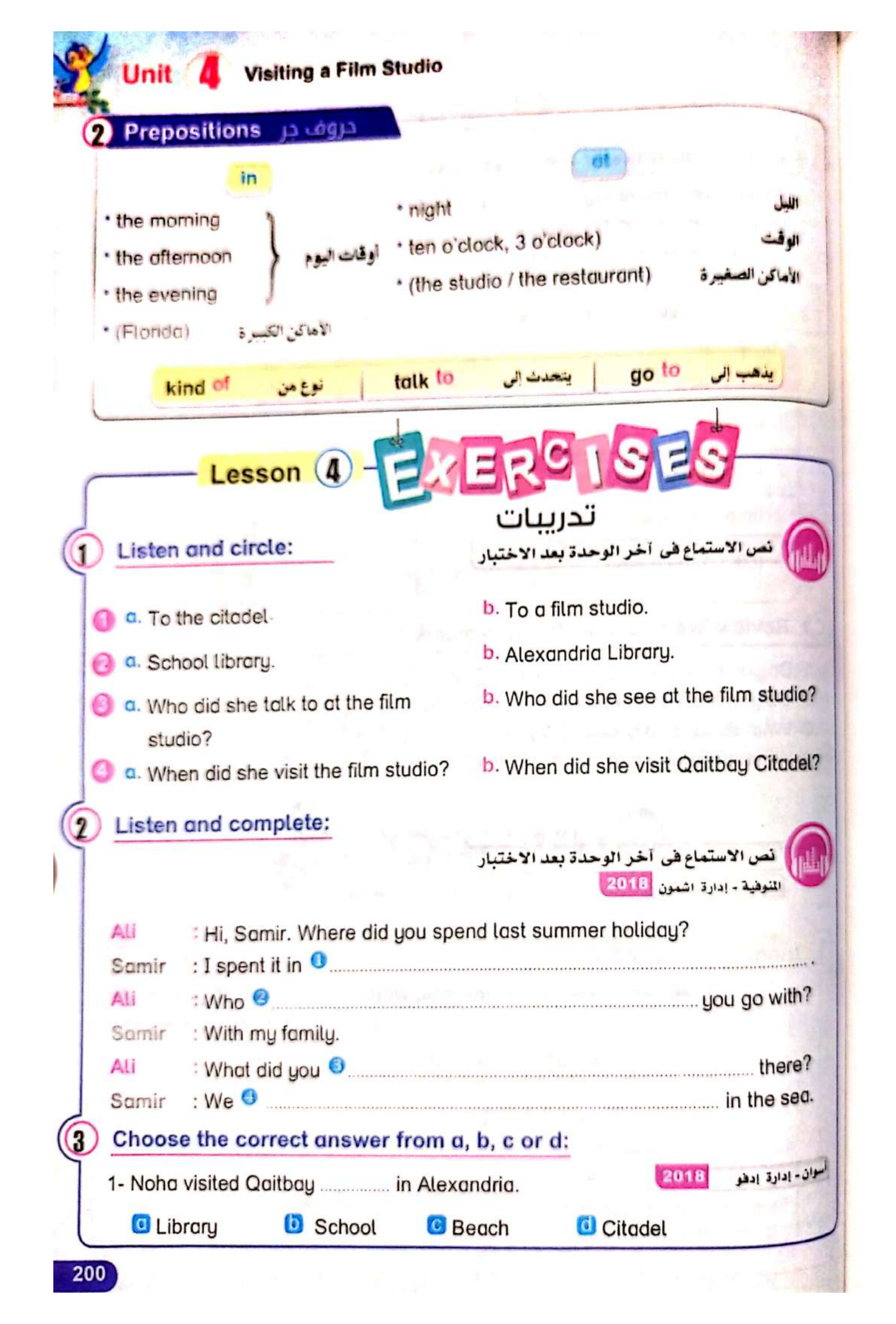
1 (hear / see / watch)

• هناك أفعال تسمى أفعال الحس مثل **hear, see, watch..** يأتى بعدها إما مصدر الفعل **(inf)** أو الفعل مضاف إليه **(ing)** مع اختلاف المعنى:

watch + مفعول + inf مصدر الفعل.

watch + مفعول + v + ing

• I watched him play football. (شاهدت الحدث كاملاً)
• I watched him playing football. (شاهدت الحدث من منتصفه)
• I watched the actors rehearse.



2 Prepositions حروف جر

in		at	
• the morning • the afternoon • the evening	أوقات اليوم	• night	الليل
		• ten o'clock, 3 o'clock)	الوقت
• (Florida)	الأماكن الكبيرة	• (the studio / the restaurant)	الأماكن الصغيرة

kind of	نوع من	talk to	يتحدث إلى	go to	يذهب إلى

Lesson 4 EXERCISES

تدريبات

1 Listen and circle:

نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

1. a. To the citadel. b. To a film studio.
2. a. School library. b. Alexandria Library.
3. a. Who did she talk to at the film studio? b. Who did she see at the film studio?
4. a. When did she visit the film studio? b. When did she visit Qaitbay Citadel?

2 Listen and complete:

نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

المنوفية - إدارة اشمون 2018

Ali : Hi, Samir. Where did you spend last summer holiday?
Samir : I spent it in 1 ....
Ali : Who 2 .... you go with?
Samir : With my family.
Ali : What did you 3 .... there?
Samir : We 4 .... in the sea.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

أسوان - إدارة إدفو 2018

1- Noha visited Qaitbay .... in Alexandria.

a Library b School c Beach d Citadel

أسوان - إدارة أسوان 2018

2- Adel Emam is a film ....

a star b nurse c studio d moon

3- Last summer, I .... a good time in Alexandria.

a have b had c having d has

4- Yesterday, I watched the actors ....

a rehearses b rehearsed c to rehearse d rehearse

5- I can borrow and read books at the ....

a library b bookshop c station d shop

6- Actors are .... an adventure film at the studio.

a saying b giving c talking d making

7- We went to the sea and played on the ....

a peach b beach c library d school

8- I want to visit Alexandria. I can't ....

a rehearse b visit c wait d meet

9- We went to the film studio .... the afternoon.

a on b at c in d last

4 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one:

					Answer
1	Aswan	Alexandria	family	Giza	....
2	on	nap	in	of	....
3	wait	go	meet	time	....
4	actor	nice	cool	good	....
5	citadel	studio	make	school	....

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

السويس - إدارة الجناين 2015

Last summer, I had a good time in Alexandria with my family. We visited Alexandria Library and Qaitbay Citadel. We enjoyed swimming in the sea and playing on the beach. In the evening, we went to a film studio and watched the actors rehearse. We enjoyed eating fish at a nice restaurant. We really spent a nice summer.

A- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1- I went to Alexandria with my ....

a friends b father c teachers d family

2- We enjoyed .... fish.

a playing b catching c eating d speaking

B- Answer the following questions:

3- What did you visit there?

....

4- Where did you go in the evening?

....

Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1- visited - Library - yesterday - We - Alexandria. 2018 سوهاج - إدارة طما

....

2- all - kinds - Mona - likes - films - of.

....

3- Did - visit - he - World - yesterday - Disney?

....

4- talk - Did - Rania - star - a film - to?

....

Write a paragraph of SEVEN (7) sentences:

"Alexandria Library"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Punctuate the following:

1- we will go to alexandria next Friday. 2018 الجيزة - إدارة أطفيح

....

2- how did Asmaa go to Alexandria last night 2016 الاسكندرية - إدارة الجمرك

....



Verbs and Nouns أفعال تأتي مع أسماء

wear a wig	يرتدى باروكة	put on make-up	تضع ماكياج
get a sunburn	يصاب بحروق الشمس	sign autographs	يوقع أوتوجرافات
take a nap	يأخذ غفوة	drive a sports car	يقود سيارة رياضية
listen to music	يستمع إلى الموسيقي	make friends	يكون صداقات
have an accident	يتعرض لحادث	talk on the phone	يتحدث في التليفون

New words كلمات جديدة

have a good time	يقضى وقت ممتع	adventure	مغامرة
film studios	استديوهات الأفلام	rehearse	يؤدى بروفة فيلم أو مسرحية
actor	ممثل	scene	مشهد في فيلم
film star	نجم سينمائى	message	رسالة

Expressions تعبيرات

right now	الآن	I'm sorry.	أنا آسف .
I don't know.	لا أعرف.	You're welcome.	على الرحب . / عفوًا.
(be) back	يرجع	Got it.	أخذتها (الرسالة).



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past ماض
try	يحاول	tried
sign	يوقع/ يمضى (على ورقة)	signed
wait	ينتظر	waited
rehearse	يؤدى بروفة	rehearsed
call	يتصل تليفونيًا	called
talk	يتحدث	talked
listen	يستمع	listened

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past ماض
give	يعطى	gave
speak	يتحدث	spoke
take	يأخذ	took
know	يعرف	knew
wear	يرتدى (ملابس)	wore
drive	يقود سيارة	drove
put	يضع	put
get	يحصل على	got
say	يقول	said



1 The Present Simple زمن المضارع البسيط

- يعبر زمن المضارع البسيط عن حقيقة fact أو عادة habit.
- يتكون زمن المضارع البسيط من مصدر الفعل مع الفاعل الجمع ونضيف "s" للفعل مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب، مثال ذلك:

I, You, We, They, اسم جمع → drive , wear ....

He, She, It, اسم مفرد → drives, wears ....

- فى حالة السؤال بـ"هل ...؟" فى زمن المضارع البسيط مع: (اسم جمع , They, I, We, You) نستخدم:

Do + الفاعل + مصدر الفعل........?

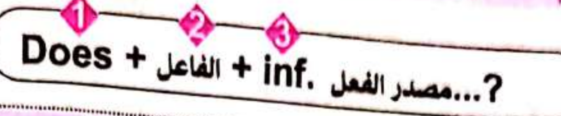
فى الإجابة:

Yes, + الفاعل + do. (للإثبات)
No, + الفاعل + don't. (للنفى)

- Do you talk on the phone? Yes, I do. / No, I don't.

- في حالة السؤال بمعنى "هل ....؟" في زمن المضارع البسيط مع :

● (اسم مفرد He, She, It) تستخدم:



Does + الفاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل ...?

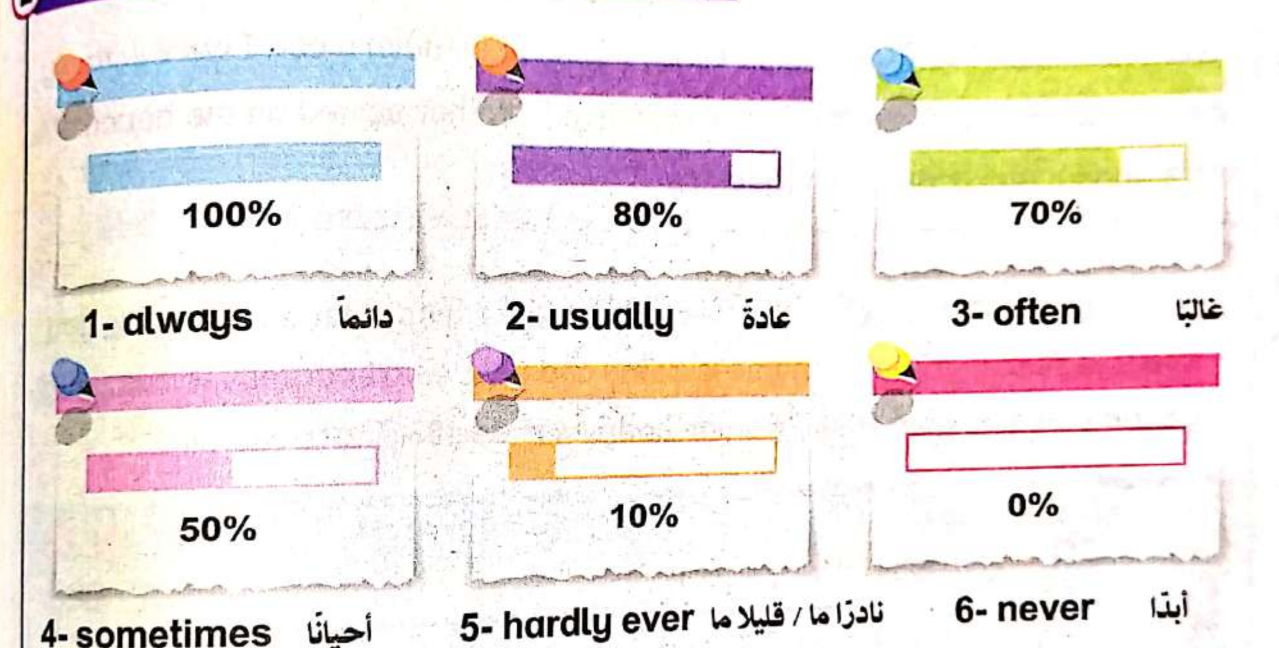
في الإجابة

Yes, + الفاعل + does. (للإثبات)

No, + الفاعل + doesn't. (للنفي)

- Does she take a nap?
- Yes, she does. / No, she doesn't.

2 Adverbs of Frequency ظروف التكرار



1- always دائماً
2- usually عادة
3- often غالبًا
4- sometimes أحيانًا
5- hardly ever نادرًا ما / قليلا ما
6- never أبدًا

● تستخدم ظروف التكرار للتعبير عن عدد مرات تكرار الفعل.

- We sometimes go to the restaurant.
- She never helps her mother.

3 Do / Does + فاعل + ever + inf ...?

- للسؤال بـ " هل ..؟" في زمن المضارع البسيط مع ظروف التكرار نستخدم (ever):

- Do you ever get a sunburn?

Yes, I always / usually / sometimes / often get a sunburn.

No, I hardly ever / never get a sunburn.

● لاحظ استخدام كلمة ever في السؤال ولا تأتي في الإجابة.

● لاحظ أن hardly ever / never تستخدم في حالة الإجابة المنفية مع No ولا تستخدم not في الجملة.





1 Write a paragraph of SEVEN (7) sentences:

" A film studio"

I went to a film studio yesterday. They were making a film. I watched the actors rehearse. The actor wore a wig. They were putting on make-up. The actor listened to music. I was happy.

" A visit to Alexandria"

I went to Alexandria last summer. I went there in my father's car. I went with my family. I swam in the sea and I went fishing. My brother played on the beach. We were happy. Alexandria is a nice place.

2 Write an email of SEVEN (7) sentences to your friend Adel about a day you spent in Alexandria. Your name is Samy and your email address is samy66@yahoo.com and your friend's email address is adel83@hotmail.com.

New Message

To	adel83@hotmail.com	Cc Bcc
From	samy66@yahoo.com	
Subject	A day in Alexandria	

Dear Adel,

How are you? I miss you so much. I had a good time in Alexandria last holiday. I went by train. I visited Alexandria Library. Then I went to Qaitbay Citadel. I went to the beach. I swam in the sea. It was so cool. See you soon.

Yours,

Samy

8 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

◄ نقدم في هذه الفقرة ارشادات لحل سؤال ترتيب الكلمات ،

١ لاحظ في هذه الوحدة يوجد افعال تأتي مع أسماء يجب حفظها جيدا للترتيب الصحيح :

take a nap - talk on the phone -
put on make-up - drive a sports car

put - Does - on - make-up - she?
Does she put on make-up?

٢ لاحظ أن في السؤال نقدم الفعل على الفاعل وفي الجملة نقدم الفاعل على الفعل :

لاحظ أيضاً في السؤال يأتي الفاعل بين الفعل المساعد والفعل الأساسي .

time - be - What - Omar - will - back?
What time will Omar be back?

٣ إذا جاء في جملة الترتيب لقب يجب أن يتبع اللقب بالاسم الدال عليه:

– لقب يضاف للرجل متزوج أو غير متزوج (Mr)
– لقب يضاف للسيدة المتزوجة (Mrs)
– لقب طبيب يضاف للرجل أو السيدة (Dr)

Adel - Mr - accident - has - never - an.
Mr Adel never has an accident.

• Exercises:

تمرن على حل جُمل الترتيب بدون توضيح الكلمة التي ستبدأ بها الجملة.

time - Where - a good - is - having - Mona?
....

did - Citadel - visit - When - she - Qaitbay?
....

They - accident - have - an - never.
....

always - autographs - signs - She.
....




ارشادات لنطق بعض الكلمات

١ انطق كلمة wear

مثل كلمة where تماما

٢ لاحظ حرف g

لا ينطق فى كلمة sign

٣ لاحظ نطق حرفى "tu" فى كلمة adventure

حيث ينطقان مثل صوت (تش) فى اللغة العربية

٤ لا تنطق حرفى (gh)

فى كلمة right وكلمة tonight

٥ لا تنطق حرف l

فى كلمة talk وانطق "a" مثل حرف "o" كما فى كلمة walk

٦ كلمة sure ينطق بها حرف s

مثل حرف "ش" فى اللغة العربية

٧ لا تنطق حرف k

فى كلمة know حيث أن حرف k لا ينطق إذا جاء بعده حرف n كما فى كلمة knee

٨ لاحظ حرفى cc

فى كلمة accident أن حرف "c" الأول ينطق k والثانى ينطق "s" لانه جاء بعده حرف i



أسئلة مجمعة من اختبارات الاعوام السابقة

1 Listen and circle:



نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

1. a. He always visits Cairo. b. He always visits Alexandria. (الجيزة - إدارة ٦ أكتوبر 2018)
2. a. Yes, I always wear a wig. b. No, I never wear a wig. (القاهرة - إدارة عين شمس 2016)
3. a. May I speak to Mona, please? b. Can I speak to Reda, please? (السويس - إدارة الأربعين 2017)
4. a. What time will he be back? b. When will he be back? (القاهرة - إدارة الأزبكية 2017)

2 Listen and complete:

نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

2017 بورسعيد - إدارة بور فؤاد

Man : Hello. May I speak to Ahmed, please?
Woman : He isn't in right ❶ ....
Man : What ❷ ....
Woman : I'm ❸ .... will he be back?
Man : Can you take a ❹ .... I don't know.
Woman : Sure. .... ?

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- Does your mother .... a wig? — 2020 قنا - إدارة قفط
a wears b wearing c wear d wore

2- I am having a good time .... my family. — 2015 الوادي الجديد - إدارة الواحات
a at b in c with d to

3- The actor .... autographs. — 2016 القاهرة - إدارة الزيتون
a drove b wore c signed d talked

4- He .... a sports car. — 2016 الجيزة - إدارة أوسيم
a talked b wrote c signed d drove

5- Huda never .... make-up. — 2016 المنوفية - إدارة أشمون
a put b put on c puts on d putting on

6-Doyou....................getasunburn?Yes,Iusuallygetasunburn. — 2016 بورسعيد - إدارة بورفؤاد
a ever b hardly c never d rarely

7- We .... have an accident. — 2016 بورسعيد - إدارة بورسعيد
a didn't b isn't c hasn't d wasn't

8- Does he usually .... a nap at noon? — 2016 الاسكندرية - إدارة الجمرك
a give b take c make d do

9- Mr. Ahmed drives a .... car. — 2019 أسوان - إدارة أسوان
a sport b sporty c sporting d sports

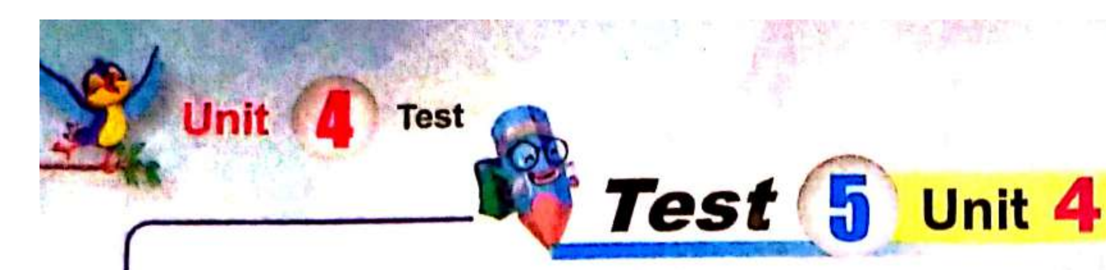
4 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1- usually - a - He - drives - car - sports. — 2017 الغربية - إدارة السنطة
....

2- take - message - a - you - Can - , please? — 2017 القاهرة - إدارة كوبرى القبة
....

3- you - listen - Do - ever - music - to? — 2020 بورسعيد - إدارة بورسعيد
....

4- put - never - I - make-up - on. — 2015 الغربية - إدارة شرق طنطا
....

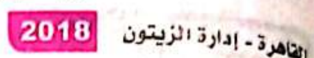


Test 5 Unit 4

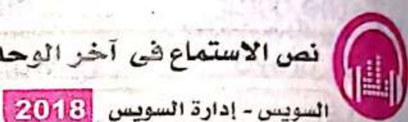
1 Listen and circle:



نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

1. a. I'm sorry. I don't know. b. I'm sorry. I can't tell you.
   دمياط - إدارة كفر البطيخ 2015
2. a. Yes, I usually listen to music. b. Yes, I usually play music.
   
   القاهرة - إدارة الزيتون 2018
3. a. What time will they come back? b. What time do they go to bed?
4. a. Does she ever drive a sports car? b. Does she ever wear a wig?
   الجيزة - إدارة الصف 2018

2 Listen and complete:


نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

السويس - إدارة السويس 2018

Kareem : Good morning.
Father : Good morning.
Kareem : ❶ .... I speak to Ahmed, please?
Father : He is not ❷ .... right now.
Kareem : ❸ .... time will he be back?
Father : I'm sorry, I ❹ .... know.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- I hardly ever .... a wig. الجيزة - إدارة البدرشين 2016
   a put b wear c give d get
2- We .... go to school on Friday. It's a holiday. المنوفية - إدارة بركة السبع 2018
   a ever b never c always d usually
3- The actor .... my autograph. الشرقية - إدارة الزقازيق 2018
   a drove b wore c signed d talked
4- .... I speak to Sameh, please? - Sure. الإسكندرية - إدارة المنتزه 2018
   a May b Is c Does d Have
5- Hani always talks on the .... أسوان - إدارة ادفو 2015
   a bag b box c phone d car

6- How often .... he read a newspaper? 2015 الشرقية - ادارة ديرب نجم

a do b are c is d does

7- I .... to school.

a walk usually b usually walk
c usually walks d usually walked

8- Rania is a famous film .... 2015 أسوان - ادارة أسوان

a school b star c library d park

4 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one:

					Answer
1	always	usually	themselves	sometimes	....
2	Cairo	message	Alexandria	Tanta	....
3	dinner	good	cool	nice	....
4	met	say	got	took	....
5	park	restaurant	citadel	autograph	....

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

2018 الشرقية - ادارة أولاد صقر

Every summer holiday, Omar goes to Alexandria with his family. They usually go to Alexandria by train. Every morning, they enjoy swimming in the sea and playing on the beach. They also visit Alexandria Library and Qaitbay Citadel. In the evening, all the family enjoy eating fish at a nice restaurant. They always have a nice holiday.

A- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1- Omar and his family usually go to Alexandria by ....

a bus b car c train d taxi

2- They enjoy .... fish at a nice restaurant.

a catching b swimming c eating d playing

B- Answer the following questions:

3- When does Omar go to Alexandria?

....

4- What do they visit in Alexandria?

....



6 Write an email of SEVEN (7) sentences:

الشرقية - إدارة ديرب نجم 2018

Write an e-mail to your friend Kareem, his e-mail address is kareem@yahoo.com to tell him about your visit to a film studio. Your name is Ali and your e-mail address is ali@yahoo.com.

New Message

To .... Cc Bcc

From ....

Subject ....

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1- wigs - actors - Do - wear - the ? — الفيوم - إدارة أبشواى 2018

....

2- visited - Library - yesterday - We - Alexandria. — البحيرة - إدارة دمنهور 2018

....

8 Punctuate the following:

1- where is Disney World — البحيرة - إدارة الدلنجات 2018

....

2- Nabila will visit Alexandria next tuesday — كفر الشيخ - إدارة الحامول 2018

....



Test 6 Units 3 & 4

1 Listen and circle:

نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

1. a. He's not in right now. b. I'm sorry. I don't know.
2. a. They're ten pounds each. b. They're twelve pounds each.
3. a. May I speak to Adel, please? b. Can you take a message?

المنوفية - إدارة الباجور 2018

4. a. What time will Noha be back? b. When will Noha be back?

البحيرة - إدارة التحرير 2018

2 Listen and complete:

نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

البحر الاحمر - إدارة سفاجة 2016

Hany : Did you visit Alexandria?
Samir : Yes, I ① ....
Hany : Who did you ② .... with?
Samir : I went with my ③ ....
Hany : What did you ④ .... there?
Samir : I visited Alexandria Library.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- Heba likes to .... the laundry by herself.
a make b do c go d have

2- The actor .... autographs last night.
a sign b signed c signing d signs

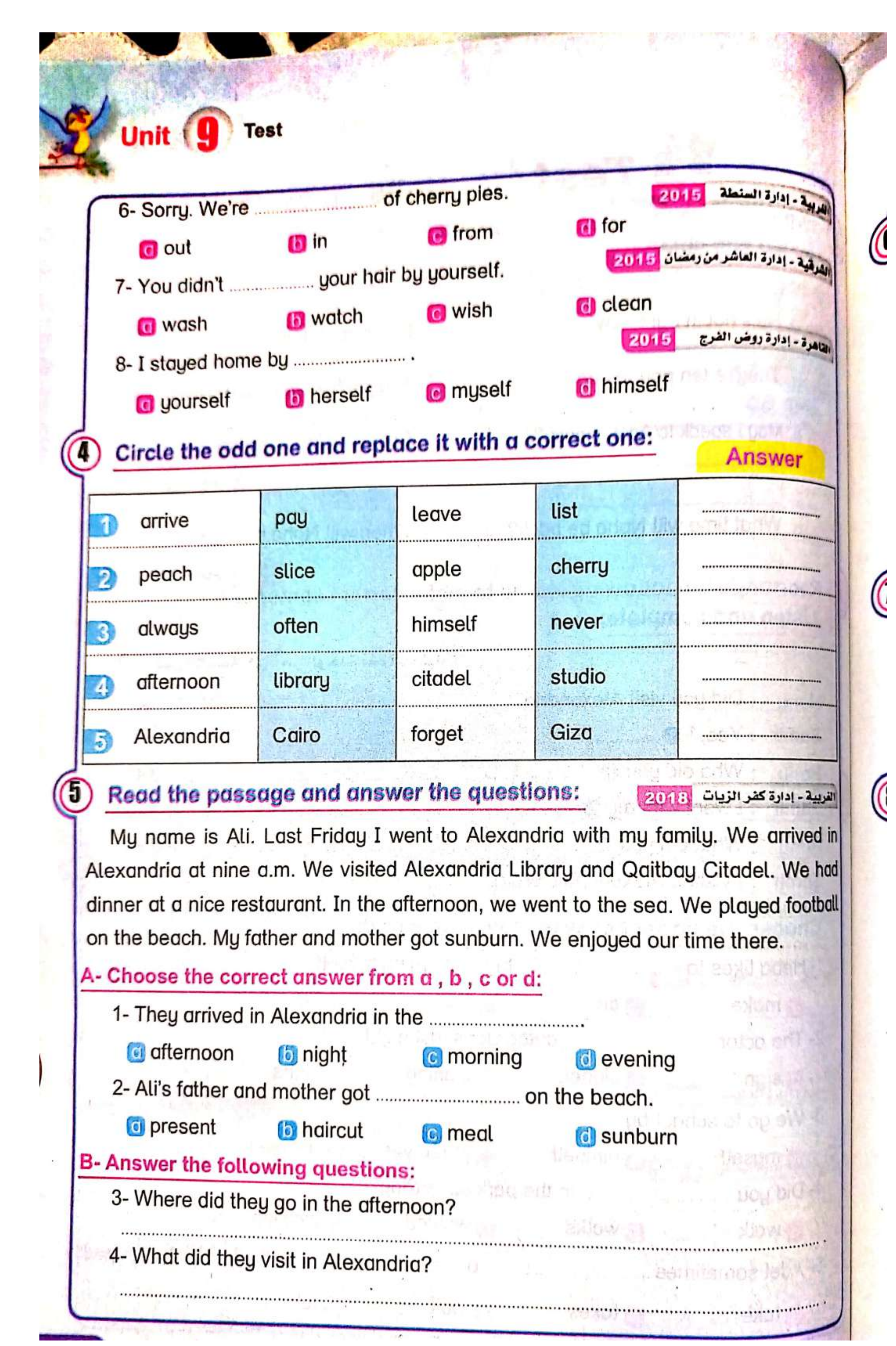
بورسعيد - إدارة بورفؤاد 2015

3- We go to school by ....
a myself b himself c ourselves d yourself

4- Did you .... to the park yesterday?
a walk b walks c walked d walking

السويس - إدارة جبل عتاقة 2018

5- Adel sometimes .... a nap.
a take b takes c took d taking



6- Sorry. We're .... of cherry pies. 2015 الغربية - إدارة السنطة

(a) out (b) in (c) from (d) for

7- You didn't .... your hair by yourself. 2015 الشرقية - إدارة العاشر من رمضان

(a) wash (b) watch (c) wish (d) clean

8- I stayed home by .... 2015 القاهرة - إدارة روض الفرج

(a) yourself (b) herself (c) myself (d) himself

4 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one:

					Answer
1	arrive	pay	leave	list	....
2	peach	slice	apple	cherry	....
3	always	often	himself	never	....
4	afternoon	library	citadel	studio	....
5	Alexandria	Cairo	forget	Giza	....

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

2018 الغربية - إدارة كفر الزيات

My name is Ali. Last Friday I went to Alexandria with my family. We arrived in Alexandria at nine a.m. We visited Alexandria Library and Qaitbay Citadel. We had dinner at a nice restaurant. In the afternoon, we went to the sea. We played football on the beach. My father and mother got sunburn. We enjoyed our time there.

A- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1- They arrived in Alexandria in the ....

(a) afternoon (b) night (c) morning (d) evening

2- Ali's father and mother got .... on the beach.

(a) present (b) haircut (c) meal (d) sunburn

B- Answer the following questions:

3- Where did they go in the afternoon?

....

4- What did they visit in Alexandria?

....

6 Write a paragraph of SEVEN (7) sentences:

" Different activities at home"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1- he - What - time - will - back - be? 2018 الفيوم - إدارة أبشواى

....

2- Yes, - listens - music - to - always - he. 2015 الدقهلية - إدارة أجا

....

8 Punctuate the following:

1- what kinds of cookies do Ali and Sarah have 2015 القاهرة - إدارة عين شمس

....

2- i'm having a good time in Alexandria 2016 بنى سويف - إدارة سمسطا

....



Unit 4  Listening materials

Exercises Lesson 1

1 Listen and circle:

1- When will she come? - She will come at nine.

2- Who is calling? - This is Kenzy Abdo.

3- Can you take a message? - Sure.

4- What time will he be back? - I don't know.

2 Listen and complete:

Marwa : Hello. May I speak to Nada, please?
Magdy : Hello, she is not in right now.
Marwa : What time will she be back?
Magdy : I'm sorry .I don't know.
Marwa : Please, tell her that I will come late tomorrow.
Magdy : Okay. I will tell her.

Exercises Lesson 2

1 Listen and complete:

Maha : Hi, Rania. Where did you go?
Rania : I went to a film studio.
Maha : Who did you go with?
Rania : With my friends.
Maha : What did the actors do?
Rania : They put on make-up.
Maha : When did you go home?
Rania : I went home in the evening.

Exercises Lesson 3

2 Listen and complete:

Faris : Do you ever drive a car?
Salma : Yes, I do.
Faris : Do you ever have an accident?
Salma : No, I never have an accident.

Faris : Do you **sign** autographs?
Salma : Yes, I do.
Faris : Are you an **actor**?
Salma : Yes, I am.

Exercises Lesson 4

1 Listen and circle:

1- Where are you going tomorrow ? - To the citadel.

2- What did you visit yesterday? - Alexandria Library.

3- Who did she talk to at the film studio? - Ahmed El-Sakka.

4- When did she visit the film studio? - Yesterday.

2 Listen and complete:

Ali : Hi, Samir. Where did you spend last summer holiday?
Samir : I spent it in **Alexandria**.
Ali : Who **did** you go with?
Samir : With my family.
Ali : What did you **do** there?
Samir : We **swam** in the sea.



أسئلة مجمعة من اختبارات الاعوام السابقة

1 Listen and circle:

1- What does he always do? - He always visits Alexandria.

2- Do you ever wear a wig? - Yes, I always wear a wig.

3- May I speak to Mona, please? - She is not in right now.

4- What time will he be back? - I don't know.

2 Listen and complete:

Man : Hello. May I speak to Ahmed, please?
Woman : He isn't in right **now**.
Man : What **time** will he be back?
Woman : I'm **sorry**. I don't know.
Man : Can you take a **message**?
Woman : Sure.





1 Listen and circle:

1- What time will he be back? - I'm sorry. I don't know.

2- Do you ever listen to music? - Yes, I usually listen to music.

3- What time will they come back? - At ten o'clock.

4- Does she ever drive a sports car? - Yes, she does.

2 Listen and complete:

Kareem : Good morning.

Father : Good morning.

Kareem : **May** I speak to Ahmed, please?

Father : He is not **in** right now.

Kareem : **What** time will he be back?

Father : I'm sorry, I **don't** know.

Test 6 Units 3 & 4

1 Listen and circle:

1- May I speak to Ahmed, please? - He's not in right now.

2- How much are the peach pies? - They're twelve pounds each.

3- May I speak to Adel, please? - Sure. Who is calling?

4- What time will Noha be back? - She will be back at 6.00.

2 Listen and complete:

Hany : Did you visit Alexandria?

Samir : Yes, I **did**.

Hany : Who did you **go** with?

Samir : I went with my **father**.

Hany : What did you **visit** there?

Samir : I visited Alexandria Library.



Aims of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

Conversation Time Lesson 1 - SB: P. 25 /WB:P. 25

- talk about the weather
- التحدث عن الطقس (حالة الجو)
- inquire after family
- الاستفسار عن العائلة
- identify speakers in a conversation
- التعرف على المتحدثين فى محادثة

Word Time Lesson 2 - SB: P.26 /WB:P. 26

- ask about the frequency of actions
- السؤال عن عدد مرات تكرار الأحداث

Focus Time & Practice Time Lesson 3 - SB: P. 27-28/WB:P. 27-28

- use adverbial phrases of frequency (once a day, twice a week, three times a month)
- استخدام العبارات الظرفية (مرة فى اليوم / مرتان فى الأسبوع / ثلاث مرات فى الشهر)
- use Wh-questions with: How often..?
- استخدام السؤال (كم عدد المرات..؟)

Reading Time & Your Time Lesson 4 - SB: P. 29 /WB:P. 29

- read a newspaper advice column
- قراءة عمود نصائح فى جريدة
- vocabulary activities
- معرفة مفردات للأنشطة



Lesson 1

Conversation Time

وقت المحادثة

SB Page: 25 • WB Page: 25



Vocabulary مفردات

Weather الطقس

cold	بارد	rain	تمطر / مطر
degree	درجة الحرارة	cloudy	ملبد بالغيوم

Expressions تعبيرات

I'm sorry.	أنا آسف .	That's right.	هذا صحيح .
'd better = had better *	من الأفضل	That's wrong.	هذا خطأ.
go home	يذهب للمنزل	do better	يتحسن (يتماثل للشفاء)

Other words كلمات أخرى

today	اليوم	serious	خطير/جاد
tonight	الليلة	maybe	ربما
fine	بخير	flu *	برد / أنفلوانزا

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماض
look	ينظر	looked
rain	تمطر	rained
start	تبدأ	started

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماض
hear	يسمع	heard
take	يأخذ	took
go	يذهب	went

Read and learn اقرأ وتعلم

- Have a seat. — تفضل بالجلوس/ اجلس.
- That's right. — هذا صحيح .
- What's the weather like? — ما حالة الطقس؟
- It's cold today. — الطقس بارد اليوم .
- It's 23 degrees. — درجة الحرارة ٢٣ .

It's getting cloudy.	إن الغيوم تتزايد .
But my sister has the flu.	لكن أختي تعاني من الأنفلونزا.
It's not serious. She is doing better today.	الحالة ليست خطيرة. إنها تتحسن اليوم.
It's starting to rain.	لقد بدأت تمطر.
I'd better go home.	من الأفضل أن أذهب للبيت .
Take care, Kamal.	اعتن بنفسك يا كمال.

(A) Listen and repeat. Point to the speakers. Then listen again.

استمع وردد. قم بالإشارة إلى المتحدثين ثم استمع مرة أخرى.



(1)
Kamal : Hi, Mr. Samy!

Mr. Samy : Hello, Kamal. Have a seat.



(2)
Kamal : Thanks. Oh! It's cold today.

Mr. Samy : That's right. It's 23 degrees!



(3)
Kamal : Wow! Do you think it's going to rain?

Mr. Samy : Maybe. It's getting cloudy.



4 **Mr. Samy** : So, how's your family, Kamal?

Kamal : They're fine. But my sister has the flu.



5 **Mr. Samy** : I'm sorry to hear that.

Kamal : It's not serious.

She's doing better today.

Mr. Samy : Good!



6 **Kamal** : Look! It's starting to rain.

Mr. Samy : I'd better go home.

Take care, Kamal.

Kamal : Bye, Mr. Samy.



B **Role-play the conversation:** يقوم التلاميذ بتمثيل المحادثة معاً :

Language Notes ملاحظات لغوية

1 نستخدم دائما الضمير **It** للحديث عن حالة الطقس .

- It's 23 degrees.
- It's getting cloudy.
- It's going to rain.

2 تعامل كلمة **family** معاملة المفرد والجمع كما يلي :

- لو كنا نقصد العائلة ككل أى كمجموعة واحدة تعامل معاملة المفرد.
- How is your family, Kamal?
- لو كنا نقصد أفراد العائلة تعامل معاملة الجمع .
- They are fine.

3 يمكن أن نستخدم فعل **have** بمعنى لديه/مصاب بـ

- My sister **has** the flu.

4 **'d better = had better + inf.** من الأفضل

- **I'd better** go home.

Language Functions وظائف لغوية

1 Asking about someone's family : • السؤال عن عائلة شخص ما :

How's your family? كيف حال أسرتك ؟

They're fine. والرد: إنهم بخير.

2 Offer: • العرض :

Have a seat. تفضل بالجلوس.

Thanks. والرد: شكرًا .

3 Agreeing to an idea : • الموافقة على فكرة :

It's cold today. الجو بارد اليوم.

That's right. It's 23 degrees! والرد: هذا صحيح . الحرارة ٢٣ درجة مئوية .

4 Asking about the weather : • السؤال عن حالة الطقس :

What's the weather like? كيف حالة الطقس:

= How's the weather?

It's cold. It's hot. والرد:

5 Talking about the weather: • التحدث عن حالة الطقس :

Wow! Do you think it's going to rain? هل تعتقد أنها ستمطر؟

Maybe. It's getting cloudy. والرد: ربما . فالغيوم تتزايد.

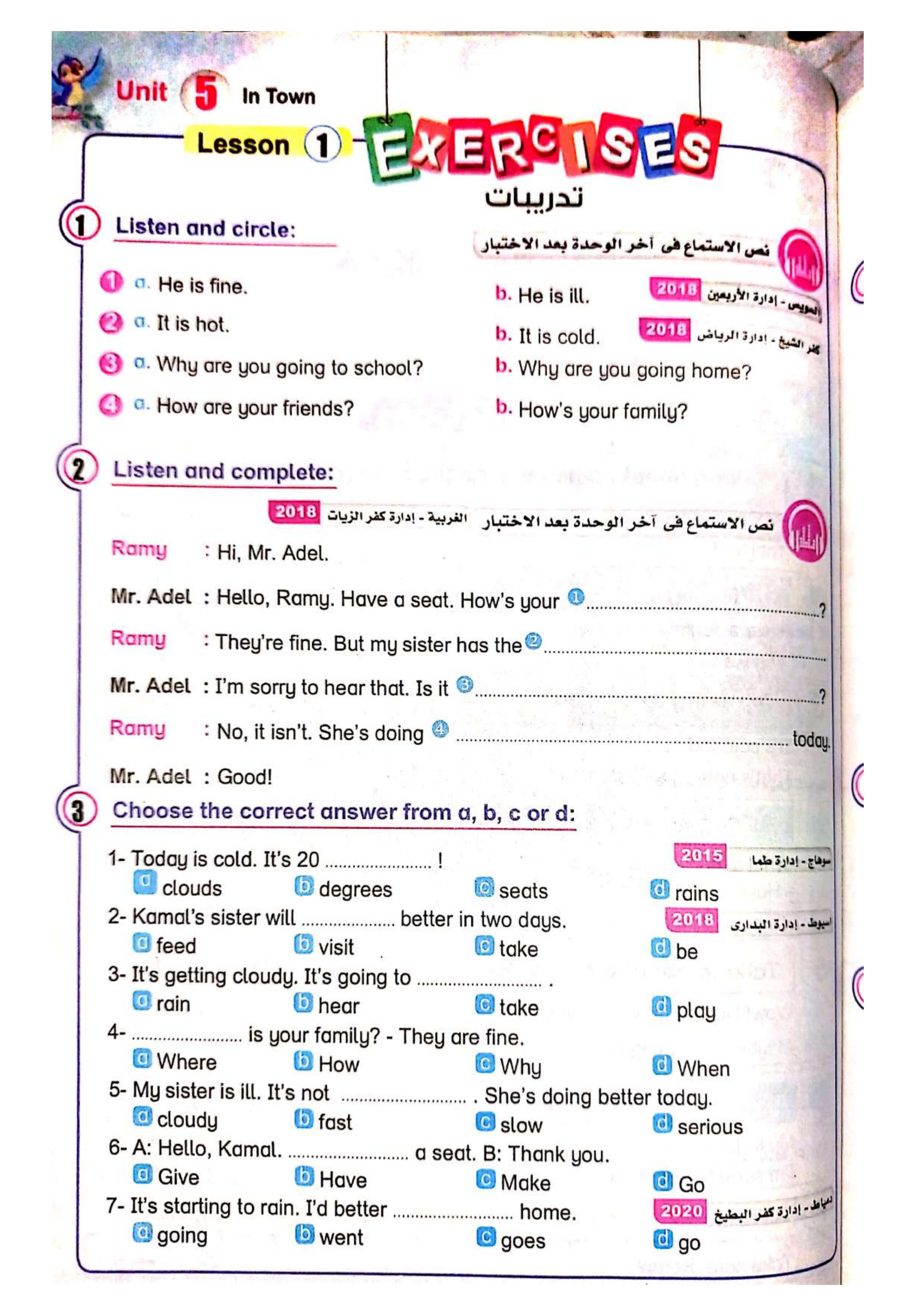
6 Telling bad news : • قول أخبار سيئة :

My sister has the flu. أختي مصابة بالبرد.

I'm sorry to hear that. والرد: آسف لسماع ذلك.

7 Warning: • التحذير :

Take care, Kamal. اعتن بنفسك يا كمال.



Lesson 1 EXERCISES تدريبات

1 Listen and circle:

نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

1. a. He is fine. b. He is ill. السويس - إدارة الأربعين 2018
2. a. It is hot. b. It is cold. كفر الشيخ - إدارة الرياض 2018
3. a. Why are you going to school? b. Why are you going home?
4. a. How are your friends? b. How's your family?

2 Listen and complete:

نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار الغربية - إدارة كفر الزيات 2018

Ramy : Hi, Mr. Adel.

Mr. Adel : Hello, Ramy. Have a seat. How's your ① ....?

Ramy : They're fine. But my sister has the ② ....

Mr. Adel : I'm sorry to hear that. Is it ③ ....?

Ramy : No, it isn't. She's doing ④ .... today.

Mr. Adel : Good!

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- Today is cold. It's 20 .... ! سوهاج - إدارة طما 2015
 a clouds b degrees c seats d rains

2- Kamal's sister will .... better in two days. أسيوط - إدارة البدارى 2018
 a feed b visit c take d be

3- It's getting cloudy. It's going to ....
 a rain b hear c take d play

4- .... is your family? - They are fine.
 a Where b How c Why d When

5- My sister is ill. It's not .... She's doing better today.
 a cloudy b fast c slow d serious

6- A: Hello, Kamal. .... a seat. B: Thank you.
 a Give b Have c Make d Go

7- It's starting to rain. I'd better .... home. دمياط - إدارة كفر البطيخ 2020
 a going b went c goes d go

8- .... care when you cross the street.

a Give b Take c Send d Have

4 Read the passage and answer the questions:

2016 الغربية - إدارة شرق طنطا

Nader lives with his family in Tanta. His father always drives them to Alexandria on Friday. He drives them in his car. Last Friday, it was cold. It was 23 degrees. Nader had the flu. It wasn't serious. The family stayed at home. Nader took medicine three times a day. Now Nader is doing better.

A- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1- Nader and his father went to Alexandria by ....

a taxi b car c train d bus

2- Nader took medicine .... times a day.

a three b four c two d five

B- Answer the following questions:

3- Where does Nader live?

....

4- When does the family go to Alexandria?

....

5 Write a paragraph of SEVEN (7) sentences:

" My sister has the flu"

....
....
....
....
....

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1- family - How - your - is?   2015 السويس - إدارة السويس

....

2- cold - it - Is - today?   2015 الأقصر - إدارة الأقصر

....

3- sorry - I - to - am - hear - that.   2018 الاسكندرية - إدارة الجمرك

....

4- sister - My - the - has - flu.   2018 الجيزة - إدارة الهرم

....



Verbs and Nouns أفعال تأتى مع أسماء



feed the birds يطعم الطيور



read a newspaper يقرا جريدة



take medicine يأخذ دواء



meet a friend يقابل صديق



visit a museum يزور متحف

take the underground يركب مترو الأنفاق



take a maths test يأخذ امتحان رياضيات



give a speech يلقي خطابًا



get a haircut يقص شعره (لدى حلاق)



bake bread يخبز الخبز (العيش)



Vocabulary مفردات

bottle	زجاجة	message	رسالة
piece	قطعة	late	متأخر

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past ماضٍ
feed	يُطعم / يغذي	fed
take	يأخذ	took
give	يعطي	gave
read	يقرأ	read
meet	يقابل	met
get	يحصل على	got

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past ماضٍ
visit	يزور	visited
bake	يخبز الخبز (العيش)	baked



Unit 5 In Town

(A) Listen and repeat:

استمع وردد:

يستمع التلاميذ إلى الكلمات الآتية ويرددونها ثم يقومون بالإشارة إلى الصورة المعبرة عن كل كلمة.

1. feed the birds
2. read a newspaper
3. take medicine
4. meet a friend
5. visit a museum
6. take the underground
7. give a speech
8. take a maths test
9. bake bread
10. get a haircut

(B) Point and say the words:

أشر إلى الصور السابقة وقل الكلمات:





C Listen and point.

استمع وأشر .

• استمع وأشر إلى صور الأشخاص الذين يقومون بفعل الأنشطة بالصفحة السابقة.

- Take the underground.
- Read a newspaper.
- Take a maths test.
- Bake bread.
- Meet a friend.
- Take medicine.
- Visit a museum.
- Feed the birds.
- Get a haircut.
- Give a speech.

Now listen and point to the speakers.

• انظر إلى الصورة السابقة وأشر إلى المتحدثين بالصفحة السابقة.

1

A: May I speak to Walid, please?

B: I'm sorry. He's not in right now.

A: Can you take a message?

B: Sure. Who's calling?

A: This is Essam. I'll be late for lunch today. I'll see him at two o'clock.

2

A: What are you doing?

B: I'm writing a letter to Emiley Chen.

3

A: How much water did you have?

B: We had two bottles of water.

A: How many pieces of apple pie did you have?

B: We had two pieces of apple pie.

Answers ✓

1- man on mobile phone by birds — رجل يتحدث فى التليفون المحمول بالقرب من الطيور.

2- girl on blanket and boy — بنت وولد يجلسان على بطانية.

3- waiter and man at café — الجرسون ورجل فى الكافيتريا.



Lesson 2 EXERCISES

تدريبات

1 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one:

					Answer
1	bread	test	fruit	pie	....
2	bird	man	boy	girl	....
3	museum	park	medicine	school	....
4	met	took	got	bake	....
5	take	friend	feed	give	....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- My brother is going to .... a haircut. 2018 الغربية - إدارة كفر الزيات

a get b take c give d bake

2- I .... medicine twice a day. 2018 الشرقية - إدارة كفر صقر

a take b make c eat d do

3- Ali will .... a speech tomorrow. 2018 القاهرة - إدارة الساحل

a meet b buy c listen d give

4- In the park, children .... birds. 2018 سوهاج - إدارة ساقلتة

a take b bake c visit d feed

5- I .... my friend yesterday.

a got b met c baked d ran

6- You'd better take the .... It's very fast. 2016 القليوبية - إدارة قليوب

a speech c underground

c nap d test

7- My grandfather reads a .... every morning.

a newspaper b speech c haircut d friend

8- The students are .... a maths test.

a baking b taking c visiting d feeding

3 Read the passage and answer the questions:

When I visited my uncle in the town, I saw a lot of people in the streets. I saw an old man reading a newspaper in a park. There was a baker baking bread. Some people took the underground. A boy got a haircut at the barber's shop. I saw some people visiting the museum. The town is very big.

A- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1- Some people in the town were .... the museum.

a visiting b getting c reading d baking

2- The boy got a haircut at the ....

a bakery b barber's c museum d park

B- Answer the following questions:

3- What did the old man read? ....

4- Is the town small? ....

4 Write a paragraph of SEVEN (7) sentences:

"My town"

....
....
....
....
....
....

5 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1- going to - birds - Is - feed - she - the? 2016 كفر الشيخ - إدارة قلين

....

2- there - Is - an - your - town - beside - underground? 2018 اسيوط - إدارة الفتح

....

3- getting - a - Salem - haircut - is.

....

4- friend - I - my - yesterday - visited. 2015 المنوفية - إدارة تلا

....

6 Punctuate the following:

1- She s going to take a maths test on Tuesday

....

2- are you going to take medicine, salwa?

....



Lesson 3

Focus Time Practice Time وقت التدريب

SB Pages: 27 - 28 • WB Pages: 27 - 28

Adverbial phrases العبارات الظرفية

once a day	مرة فى اليوم	twice a week	مرتان فى الأسبوع
three times a month	ثلاث مرات فى الشهر	four times a year	أربع مرات فى السنة

A Listen and repeat: استمع وردد :

Monday	
8:00	
9:00	
10:00	
11:00	*
12:00	
1:00	
2:00	
3:00	
4:00	

1. once a day

Sun.	Mon.	Tues.	Wed.	Thurs.	Fri.	Sat.
	*			*		

2. twice a week

June						
Sun.	Mon.	Tues.	Wed.	Thurs.	Fri.	Sat.
					1	2
3	4	5 *	6	7	8	9
10	11	12	13	14 *	15	16
17	18	19	20	21	22	23
24	25 *	26	27	28	29	30

3. three times a month

January *	February	March *	April
May	June *	July	August
September	October	November	December *

4. four times a year

B Listen and repeat: استمع وردد :

A: How often do you read a newspaper?
B: I read a newspaper once a month.

A: How often does she read a newspaper?
B: She reads a newspaper once a month.



(C) Look at page 26. Listen and point:

• انظر إلى الصورة فى صفحة ٢٦ بكتاب المدرسة ثم اشر إلى ما تسمعه.

A: How often does he get a haircut?
B: He gets a haircut twice a month.
A: How often do they take the underground?
B: They take the underground five times a week.
A: How often does he give a speech?
B: He gives a speech four times a year.

Grammar



قواعد لغوية

How often ....? كم عدد المرات.............؟

• تستخدم How often? بمعنى "كم مرة؟" للسؤال عن عدد المرات التى يتكرر فيها فعل ما.

• عند السؤال بـ How often? فى زمن المضارع البسيط نستخدم:

(1) How often + (2) do + (3) you / they / اسم جمع + (4) inf. مصدر الفعل?

(1) How often + (2) does + (3) he / she / it / اسم مفرد + (4) inf. مصدر الفعل?

• والإجابة تكون كالتالى:

Once	a	day	مرة يوميًا
Twice		week	مرتان أسبوعيًا
Three times		month	ثلاث مرات شهريًا
Four times		year	أربع مرات سنويًا

لاحظ الآتى

• أن: (a) توضع قبل كلمة (day - week - month - year) بمعنى (كل / فى كل).

• How often do you get a haircut?
I get a haircut once a month.

• How often does your mother do laundry?
My mother does laundry twice a week.

• How often does he read a newspaper?
He reads a newspaper once a day.

• How often do they take the underground?
They take the underground five times a year.



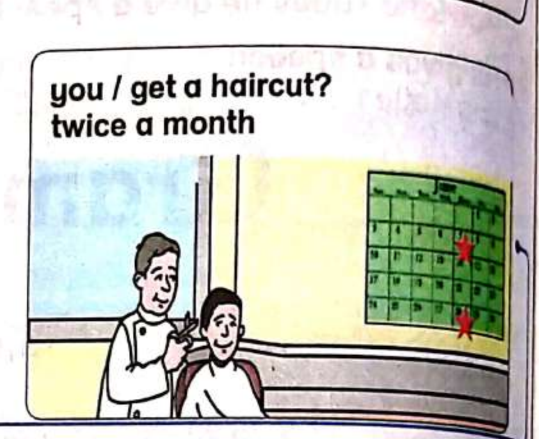


A Listen and repeat. Then practise with a partner:

انظر إلى الصور وتبادل أنت وزميلك السؤال بـ(How often) والإجابة عليه كما في المثال.

How often do you visit a museum? — I visit a museum four times a year.

1



How often do you get a haircut?

I get a haircut twice a month.

2



How often does she take medicine?

She takes medicine three times a day.

3



How often does he feed the birds?

He feeds the birds once a day.

4



How often does he meet his friend?

He meets his friend twice a week.



5 How often do you take the underground?

We take the underground five times a week.



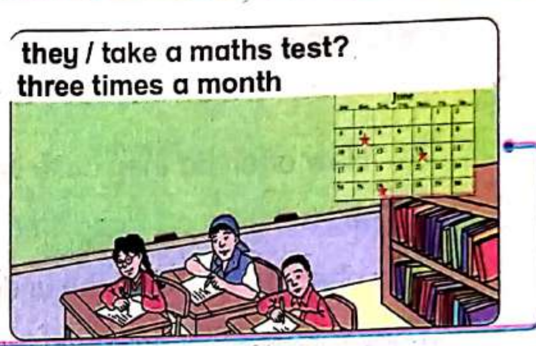
6 How often does she bake bread?

She bakes bread once a day.



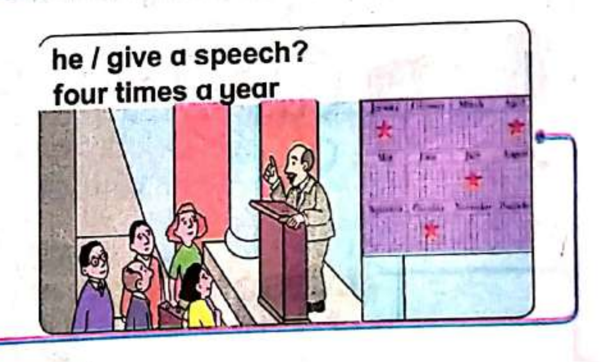
7 How often do they take a maths test?

They take a maths test three times a month.



8 How often does he give a speech?

He gives a speech four times a year.



B Look at page 26. Practise with a partner.

انظر إلى صفحة ٢٦ بكتاب المدرسة وتدرب مع زميلك كما يلى:

يشير التلميذ الأول إلى الخباز ويقول:

S1: (Pointing to the baker):

كم مرة تخبز الخبز؟

How often does she bake bread?

هى تخبز الخبز مرتان فى اليوم.

S2: She bakes bread twice a day.

C Listen and sing along:

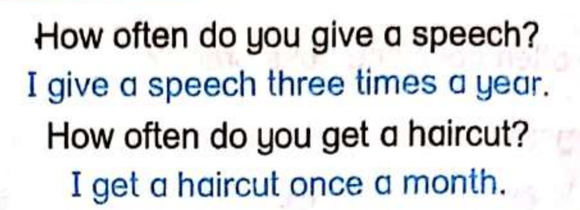
استمعوا وغنوا سويًا:

• يستمع التلاميذ إلى أغنية (How Often Do You Give a Speech?) ويرددونها:



The SONG

How Often Do You Give a Speech?



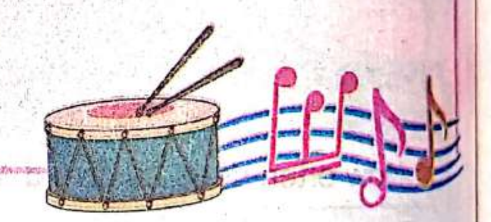
How often do you give a speech?
I give a speech three times a year.
How often do you get a haircut?
I get a haircut once a month.

How often does he feed the birds?
He feeds the birds four times a month.
How often does he take a maths test?
He takes a maths test twice a week.



How often do they bake bread?
They bake bread three times a day.
How often do they take the underground?
They take the underground twice a day.





Lesson 3 EXERCISES

تدريبات

1 Listen and circle:

نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

1. a. They take medicine four times a day. b. They take medicine three times a day.
2. a. He gets a haircut once a month. b. He gets a haircut twice a month.
3. a. How often do you give a speech? b. How often do you read a newspaper? دمياط - إدارة كفر سعد 2015
4. a. How often does she feed the birds? b. How often does she bake bread? الاسكندرية - إدارة الجمرك 2018



1) Listen and complete:

2018 مطروح - إدارة سيوة | نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

Sara : Good morning. Do you ever listen to music?
Fatma : No, I ❶ .... ever listen to music.
Sara : ❷ .... do you do at the weekend?
Fatma : I go out for a ❸ .... or watch TV.
Sara : How ❹ .... do you watch TV?
Fatma : Three times a week.

2) Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one:

					Answer
1	May	maths	April	July	....
2	Heba	Monday	Tuesday	Friday	....
3	restaurant	museum	shop	laundry	....
4	read	visit	bread	give	....
5	week	year	month	speech	....

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- Heba feeds the birds .... a week. (2016 الاسكندرية - إدارة العجمى)
a) once b) two c) three d) one

2- She .... a newspaper once a month. (2016 الشرقية - إدارة منيا القمح)
a) read b) reading c) is read d) reads

3- Magdy gets a haircut once .... month.
a) any b) a c) an d) the

4- A: How .... do you have lunch at a restaurant? (2018 القليوبية - إدارة كفر شكر)
B: Twice a month.
a) many b) old c) often d) long

5- I take medicine .... a day. (2018 الفيوم - إدارة أبشواى)
a) two b) twice c) to d) too

6- How often .... she read a newspaper? (2018 السويس - إدارة السويس)
a) is b) have c) do d) does

7- I meet my friends .... a week. 2015

a) two b) one c) once d) times

8- She .... a maths test once a month.

a) took b) takes c) take d) taking

9- They give a speech three times ....

a) year b) years c) a year d) month

10- Eman bakes bread three .... a week.

a) time b) a time c) every time d) times

11- How .... do you go to the library? - Once a week. 2016 البحر الأحمر - إدارة سفاجة

a) often b) much c) many d) long

5 Write a paragraph of SEVEN (7) sentences:

" Visiting different places in Egypt"

....

....

....

....

....

....

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1- do - medicine - you - take - How often? 2018 سوهاج - إدارة سوهاج

....

2- a speech - twice - He - gave - a month. 2018 بورسعيد - إدارة بورسعيد

....

3- do - How - often - get - you - a haircut? 2018 الجيزة - إدارة إمبابة

....

4- three - take - a day - times - They - the underground. 2018 القاهرة - إدارة الساحل

....

7 Punctuate the following:

1- yes Gamal goes to the museum once a week.

....

2- How often do farah and Khaled bake bread

....

7- I meet my friends .... a week. 2015 أسوان - إدارة إدفو

a two b one c once d times

8- She .... a maths test once a month.

a took b takes c take d taking

9- They give a speech three times ....

a year b years c a year d month

10- Eman bakes bread three .... a week.

a time b a time c every time d times

11- How .... do you go to the library? - Once a week. 2016 البحر الأحمر - إدارة سفاجة

a often b much c many d long

5 Write a paragraph of SEVEN (7) sentences:

" Visiting different places in Egypt"

....

....

....

....

....

....

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1- do - medicine - you - take - How often? 2018 سوهاج - إدارة سوهاج

....

2- a speech - twice - He - gave - a month. 2018 بورسعيد - إدارة بورسعيد

....

3- do - How - often - get - you - a haircut? 2018 الجيزة - إدارة إمبابة

....

4- three - take - a day - times - They - the underground. 2018 القاهرة - إدارة الساحل

....

7 Punctuate the following:

1- yes Gamal goes to the museum once a week.

....

2- How often do farah and Khaled bake bread

....



4 وقت القراءة

SB Pages: 29 - 30 • WB Pages: 29 - 30



Vocabulary مفردات

New Words كلمات جديدة

pest	شخص مزعج	tell	يخبر
without	بدون	fair	عدل
spend time	يقضي وقتا	attention *	انتباه / اهتمام
bother *	يضايق	grow up	يكبر

• لاحظ : كلمة **pest** اسم وليس صفة.

Adjectives صفات

crazy	مجنون	little	صغير في السن
patient *	صبور	older	أكبر سنًا
big	كبير		

• لاحظ : كلمة **patient** إذا جاءت كاسم تكون بمعنى "مريض" أما كصفة معناها "صبور".

Expressions تعبيرات

all the time	طوال الوقت	It's not fair.	هذا ليس عدلاً.
go into	يدخل	without asking	بدون استئذان

Other words كلمات أخرى

little brother	أخ أصغر	room	حجرة
problem	مشكلة	things	أشياء

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
follow	يتتبع	followed
bother	يضايق / يزعج	bothered

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
tell	يخبر	told
spend	يقضي (وقتا)	spent



love	يحب	loved
use	يستخدم	used
borrow	يستعير / يقترض	borrowed
want	يريد	wanted
ask	يسأل	asked
help	يساعد	helped

have/has to	يجب أن	had to
find	يجد	found
forget	ينسى	forgot
grow up	يكبر للأشخاص	grew up
can	يستطيع	could



Read and learn اقرأ وتعلم

- I have a big problem. لدى مشكلة كبيرة.
- My little brother is a pest! أخي الأصغر شخص مزعج!
- He follows me all the time and always bothers me and my friends. إنه يتتبعني طوال الوقت و دائما يضايقني أنا و أصدقائي.
- He goes into my room and takes my things without asking. إنه يدخل حجرتي و يأخذ أشيائي بدون استئذان.
- My mum tells me to be patient because I'm older.. تقول لي والدتي أن أكون صبورة لأنني أكبر سنًا منه
- Your little brother loves you very much and wants your attention. أخوك الصغير يحبك كثيرا و يريد منك اهتمامًا.
- Going Crazy. سوف أجن (هاتجنن).



A Listen and read along: استمع واقرأ:

Dear Sarah



Dear Sarah,
I am thirteen years old and I have a big problem. My little brother is a pest! He follows me all the time and always bothers me and my friends. He goes into my room and takes my things without asking. My mum tells me to be patient because I am older.
It's not fair! What can I do?
Going Crazy

Dear Crazy,
Your little brother loves you very much and wants your attention. Spend time with him. Tell him he can use your things but he has to ask first. Help him find some friends. And don't forget, he will grow up!
Sarah

New Words

pest	bother
without	tell
patient	fair
crazy	attention
spend time	grow up

B Listen and circle (True) or (False):

		True	False
1	Crazy is thirteen years old.		
2	Crazy is younger than her brother.		
3	Her brother bothers their mother.		
4	Her brother borrows her things without asking.		

C Read the question. Write the answer:

1- What is Crazy's problem?
   Her brother is a pest.
2- Who does Crazy's brother bother?
   ....
3- Who tells Crazy to be patient? ....
4- What does Crazy's brother want? ....

A Read.

Workbook

Dear Sarah

Dear Sarah,

There is a pest in our class at school. His name is Hosam. He follows us all the time and always bothers us. He takes our things without asking. Our teacher told us to be patient. It's not fair! What can we do?

Hanaa and Shaimaa

Dear Hanaa and Shaimaa,

Hosam bothers you because he wants your attention. Spend time with him. Help him find some friends.

Sarah

B Read the question. Write the answer:

1- Who's a pest? ....
2- Who told Hanaa and Shaimaa to be patient? ....
3- Why does the pest bother Hanaa and Shaimaa?
   ....

C Read and match:

1. Hosam • • told them to be patient.
2. Sarah • • takes their things without asking.
3. Hanaa and Shaimaa • • says, "Help him find some friends."
4. Their teacher • • told them to spend time with Hosam.
5. Sarah • • is in Hanaa and Shaimaa's class.
6. Hosam • • say, "It's not fair!"



Grammar
قواعد لغوية

1 هناك أفعال يأتى بعدها مفعول أو ضمير مفعول

ومن هذه الأفعال: **follow / bother / tell / help / love**

- My brother always bothers me. (not I)
- He usually helps her. (not she)
- The bad boy follows us. (not we)

• تذكر ضمائر الفاعل والمفعول.

ضمائر الفاعل	ضمائر المفعول	ضمائر الفاعل	ضمائر المفعول
I	me	You	you
He	him	We	us
She	her	They	them
It	it		

2 without بدون + v + ing / noun

• يأتى بعد without أما (فعل + ing) أو اسم.

- He takes my things without asking.
- She left home without her bag.

3 have to / has to + inf. مصدر الفعل يجب أن

- Your brother has to ask first.

4 have / has a problem لديه / عنده مشكلة

- Hassan has a big problem.

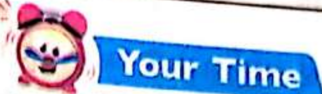
5 سبب + (لأن) **because** + نتيجة

- My mother tells me to be patient because I'm older.

6 help + to + inf. مصدر الفعل = help + inf. مصدر الفعل

- **Help** him **to** find some friends. (✓)

= **Help** him find some friends. (✓)



A Listen and answer the questions: استمع واجب عن الأسئلة:

1- How often do you read a newspaper?

....

2- How often do you get a haircut?

....

3- How often do you visit a museum?

....

4- How often do you feed the birds?

....

B Ask your classmates. Write their names and circle Yes or No.

اسأل زملائك واكتب اسماؤهم ثم ضع دائرة حول Yes أو No:

Do you take medicine once a day?

	Name	Yes / No
1- Take medicine once a day		Yes No
2- Read a newspaper once a week		Yes No
3- Get a haircut once a month		Yes No

C Review. Read and write the answers: راجع . اقرأ واكتب الإجابات:

1- Do you ever visit a museum?

....

2- Do you like feeding the birds?

....

3- How often do you give a speech?

....

4- Is there an underground in your town?

....

EXERCISES تدريبات

1 Listen and circle:


نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

1. a. He bothers me. b. He always follows me.
2. a. My brother and my friends. b. My little brother.
3. a. How often do you visit the museum? b. How many times do you visit the museum? 2015 سوهاج - إدارة طهطا
4. a. Who tells you to be patient? b. Who has a big problem?

2 Listen and complete:


نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

Hazem : I have a big problem, Emad.

Emad : 1 .... is it?

Hazem : My little brother always 2 .... me.

Emad : What does he 3 ....?

Hazem : He always follows me and takes my things.

Emad : I think he wants your 4 ....

Hazem : I'll try to help him.

3 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one:

					Answer
1	what	who	tell	how	....
2	mum	time	brother	sister	....
3	borrow	spend	without	forget	....
4	Hossam	Sarah	Shaimaa	Hanaa	....
5	patient	little	crazy	room	....

4 Read the passage and answer the questions:

1- You shouldn't take your sister's things .... asking.
a without b with c for d at

2- Do you want to be a doctor when you .... up?
a go b give c grow d get

3- Nadia is a .... She bothers her friends all the time.
a pest b boy c friend d man

4- Help your brother to .... friends.
a found b finds c finding d find

5- Your little brother bothers you because he wants your ....
a problem b attention c name d class

6- You should be .... with people who bother you. 2015 الإسماعيلية - إدارة القصاصين
a sorry b noisy c happy d patient

7- It's not ....! My brother bothers me and my mum tells me to be patient.
a sad b patient c crazy d fair

8- Your brother .... you very much. 2018 المنوفية - إدارة منوف
a loves b colours c starts d adds

9- Please, ... me your name.
a talk b tell c ask d play

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

Nabil is my friend. He lives in Alexandria. He is in grade six in primary school. He has two sisters. Nabil is older than his sisters. His father works in a hospital and his mother is a teacher. He visits his grandfather on Friday. His teachers like him because he is clever and always helps others.

A- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1- Nabil is in grade ....
a two b six c five d three

2- His mother works in a ....
a shop b bank c school d hospital

B- Answer the following questions:

1- Why do teachers like Nabil? ....

2- When does Nabil visit his grandfather? ....

6 Write an email of SEVEN (7) sentences:

Write an email to your friend Amir to tell him about your brother who is a pest. Your name is Ahmed and your email address is ahmed77@yahoo.com and your friend's email address is amir25@gmail.com.

New Message

To .... Cc Bcc

From ....

Subject ....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1- me - follows - He - all - the time.

....

2- does - your - Who - brother - bother?

....

3- little - your - you - love - sister - Does ?

....

4- little - pest - My - is - brother - a. 2018 أسيوط - إدارة البدارى

....

5- years - am - thirteen - I - old. 2020 المنيا - إدارة سمالوط

....

8 Punctuate the following:

1- Does he ever bother Hanaa and shimaa 2018 البحيرة - إدارة ايتاى البارود

....

2- i'll be patient because I am older

....





Weather الطقس

cold	بارد	rain	تمطر / مطر
degree	درجة (الحرارة)	cloudy	ملبد بالسحب (مغيم)

Verbs and Nouns أفعال تأتي مع أسماء

feed the birds	يطعم الطيور	read a newspaper	يقرأ جريدة
take medicine	يأخذ دواء	meet a friend	يقابل صديق
visit a museum	يزور متحفًا	take the underground	يركب المترو
give a speech	يلقى خطابًا	take a maths test	يأخذ امتحان رياضيات
bake bread	يخبز الخبز (العيش)	get a haircut	يقص شعره (لدى حلاق)

Expressions تعبيرات

Have a seat.	تفضل بالجلوس.	do better	يتحسن (يتماثل للشفاء)
go home	يذهب للمنزل	It's getting cloudy.	تتزايد الغيوم.
spend time	يقضى وقت	It's not fair.	هذا ليس عدلاً.
all the time	طوال الوقت	'd better = had better	من الأفضل

Other words كلمات أخرى

serious	خطير	today	اليوم
flu	برد / انفلونزا	fine	بخير
patient	صبور	pest	شخص مزعج
older	أكبر في العمر	crazy	مجنون
tonight	الليلة	big problem	مشكلة كبيرة



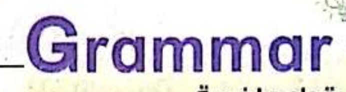
Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past ماضٍ
start	يبدأ	started
visit	يزور	visited
bake	يخبز	baked
rain	تمطر	rained
follow	يتتبع	followed
bother	يضايق / يزعج	bothered
borrow	يستعير / يقترض	borrowed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past ماضٍ
hear	يسمع	heard
feed	يطعم / يغذى	fed
give	يعطى	gave
meet	يقابل	met
spend	يقضى (وقتا)	spent
find	يجد	found
forget	ينسى	forgot
grow up	يكبر / ينمو (للأشخاص)	grew up




Grammar قواعد لغوية

1 'd better + inf. مصدر الفعل (يُفضل أن / من الأفضل أن..)

- I'd better go home.

2 How often .....? كم عدد المرات....؟

- عند السؤال بـ How often? في زمن المضارع البسيط نستخدم:

How often + { do / does } + فاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل ...?

• والإجابة تكون كالتالي:

Once	a	day مرة يوميًا
Twice		week مرتان أسبوعيًا
Three times		month ثلاث مرات شهريًا
Four times		year أربع مرات سنويًا

- How often does she read a newspaper?
- She reads a newspaper once a day.

3 without بدون + v + ing / noun

- He takes my things without asking.
- She left home without her pen.





Writing Skills

1 **Write an email to your friend Waleed to tell him about your brother who is a pest. Your name is Magdy and your email address is magdy35@yahoo.com and your friend's email address is waleed86@hotmail.com.**

New Message

To	waleed86@hotmail.com	**Cc Bcc**
From	magdy35@yahoo.com	
Subject	My brother is a pest	

Dear Waleed,

I miss you very much. I have a big problem. My brother is a pest. He always bothers me and my friends. He takes our things without asking. He follows me all the time. My father told me to be patient. What can I do?

Love,
Magdy

---

2 **Write an email to your friend Hanaa telling her that your sister is ill in hospital. She has the flu. Your name is Mahmoud and your email address is mahmoud102@gmail.com and your friend's email address is hanaa60@yahoo.com**

New Message

To	hanaa60@yahoo.com.	**Cc Bcc**
From	mahmoud102@gmail.com.	
Subject	My sister who is ill in hospital.	

Dear Hanaa,

I hope you are fine. My little sister is in hospital. She has the flu. It is not serious. I visited her yesterday. The doctors see her every day. She is doing better now. She will go home tomorrow. See you soon.

Yours,
Mahmoud

3 Write a paragraph of SEVEN (7) sentences:

"A visit to the park"

A I met my uncle yesterday. It was cold. He asked me about my family. I told him that my sister had the flu. It wasn't serious. My sister is doing better today. I left the park when it started to rain.

"Different activities we did yesterday"

B We went to the park yesterday. My father read the newspaper. My brother fed the birds. My mother gave medicine to my sister. My family visited a museum. I met a friend there. I was so happy.

4 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1- sister - has - My - flu - the.

My sister has the flu.

2- family - , Ahmed - How - your - 's?

How's your family, Ahmed?

3- feed - I'm - to - birds - going - the.

I'm going to feed the birds.

4- get - are - They - to - haircut - going - a.

They are going to get a haircut.

5- does - How often - underground - the - she - take?

How often does she take the underground?

6- a - reads - once - week - He - a newspaper.

He reads a newspaper once a week.

7- brother - My - pest - a - little - is.

My little brother is a pest.

إرشادات لنطق بعض الكلمات

١ لاحظ فى نطق كلمة maths

تنطق th مثل ث وتنطق حرف "s" مثل "س"

٢ فى نطق كلمة Wednesday

حرف 'd' الأول لا ينطق silent
وحرف "s" ينطق مثل 'z'

٣ فى نطق كلمة patient

تنطق "ti" مثل "ش"
وأيضًا فى كلمة attention
تنطق (tion) مثل "شن"

٤ لاحظ أن ('d better)

تنطق had better
وليس would better

٥ تنطق كلمة flu

مثل كلمة blue مع اختلاف أول حرف فقط

٦ تنطق حرف th

فى كلمة bother "ذ"
كما فى كلمة brother



أسئلة مجمعة من اختبارات الأعوام السابقة

1 Listen and circle:



نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

1. a. Maybe. It's getting cloudy. b. I don't know. — الاسكندرية - إدارة العصافرة 2018
2. a. I'm ill. b. I'm fine. — أسوان - إدارة أسوان 2017
3. a. How many times do you swim? b. How often do you go swimming? — قنا - إدارة فرشوط 2017
4. a. Do you think it will rain? b. Do you think it is cloudy? — السويس - إدارة جبل عتاقة 2017



Listen and complete:

نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

أسيوط - إدارة البدارى 2018

Kamal : Hi, Mr Samy.

Mr Samy : Hello, Kamal. ❶ .... a seat.

Kamal : Oh! It's ❷ .... today.

Mr Samy : Do you ❸ .... it's going to rain?

Kamal : Maybe. It's getting cloudy.

Mr Samy : ❹ .... is your family?

Kamal : They're fine. But my brother had an accident.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- She .... a newspaper once a month. (الفيوم - إدارة إطسا 2017)

a is read b read c reading d reads

2- I'd better .... home.

a goes b going c go d went

3- She .... bread once a day. (الإسكندرية - إدارة الجمرك 2015)

a feeds b reads c meets d bakes

4- He goes to my room and takes my things without .... (الدقهلية - إدارة أجا 2016)

a asked b asking c asks d ask

5- Your teacher .... you very much. (القليوبية - إدارة كفر شكر 2015)

a drives b drinks c writes d loves

6- They take a .... once a month. (دمياط - إدارة كفر البطيخ 2016)

a haircut b friends c test d speech

7- Do you think it is .... to rain? (قنا - إدارة قفط 2016)

a go b going c goes d went

8- My .... has the flu. (السويس - إدارة جبل عتاقة 2016)

a studio b film c sister d car

9- My brother is a pest. He always .... me. (القليوبية - إدارة شبرا الخيمة 2020)

a visits b helps c bothers d writes

4 Read the passage and answer the questions:

سوهاج - إدارة ساقلتة 2017

I'm Zahraa Marwan. I'm in primary five. My father is a teacher. My mother is a housewife. My younger brother Mahmoud is in primary two. I'm happy because my father loves me. I go to school on foot. There's a pest in our class called Shehab. He follows us all the time and always bothers us. He takes our things without asking. My father told me to be patient.

A- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- Zahraa's younger brother goes to primary ....

a two   b three   c five   d six

2- .... is a pest.

a Zahraa   b Mahmoud   c Shehab   d Marwan

B- Answer the following questions:

3- Why is Zahraa happy?

....

4- What is the job (وظيفة) of Zahraa's father?

....

5 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1- often - you - How - feed - do - the birds?   2018 اسيوط - إدارة الفتح

....

2- birds - He - the - feeds - once - a day.   2015 الوادى الجديد - إدارة الواحات

....

3- little - a pest - My - is - brother.   2016 أسيوط - إدارة ناصر

....

4- often - How - you - do - a museum - visit?   2017 سوهاج - إدارة البلينا

....

5- the flu - have - he - Does?   2017 كفر الشيخ - إدارة الرياض

....

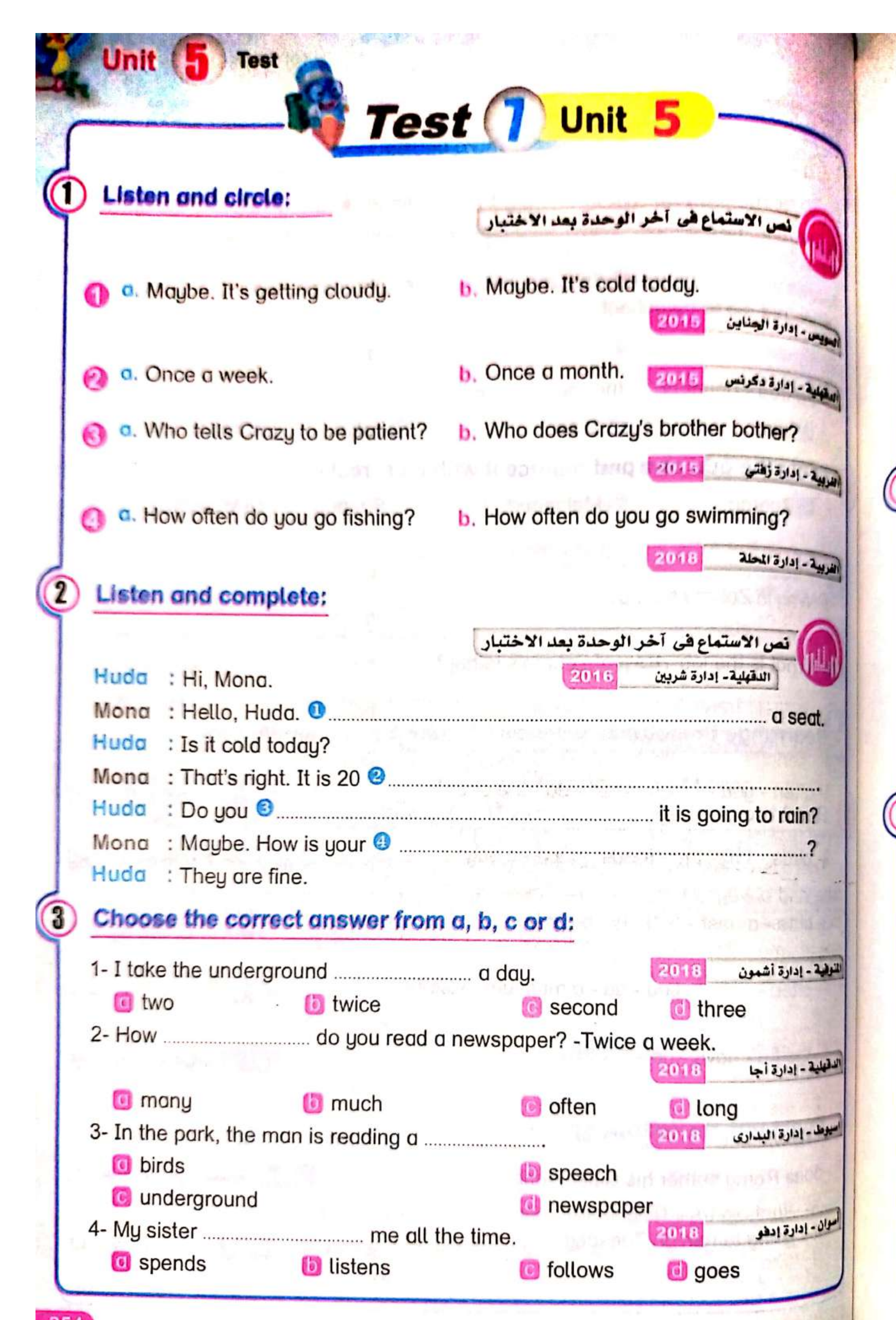
6 Punctuate the following:

- does Ramy bother his sister Rana   2020 الدقهلية - إدارة غرب المنصورة

....

- it s going to rain on Tuesday.   2018 قنا - إدارة قفط

....



Test 7 Unit 5

1 Listen and circle:

نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

1. a. Maybe. It's getting cloudy. b. Maybe. It's cold today. — 2015 السويس - إدارة الجناين
2. a. Once a week. b. Once a month. — 2015 الدقهلية - إدارة دكرنس
3. a. Who tells Crazy to be patient? b. Who does Crazy's brother bother? — 2015 الغربية - إدارة زفتى
4. a. How often do you go fishing? b. How often do you go swimming? — 2018 الغربية - إدارة المحلة

2 Listen and complete:

نص الاستماع فى آخر الوحدة بعد الاختبار

2016 الدقهلية - إدارة شربين

Huda : Hi, Mona.
Mona : Hello, Huda. ❶ .... a seat.
Huda : Is it cold today?
Mona : That's right. It is 20 ❷ ....
Huda : Do you ❸ .... it is going to rain?
Mona : Maybe. How is your ❹ .... ?
Huda : They are fine.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- I take the underground .... a day. — 2018 المنوفية - إدارة أشمون
a two b twice c second d three

2- How .... do you read a newspaper? -Twice a week. — 2018 الدقهلية - إدارة أجا
a many b much c often d long

3- In the park, the man is reading a .... — 2018 أسيوط - إدارة البدارى
a birds b speech
c underground d newspaper

4- My sister .... me all the time. — 2018 أسوان - إدارة إدفو
a spends b listens c follows d goes

5- It's starting to rain. I'd better .... home. 2015 الأقصر - إدارة إسنا

a going b went c goes d go

6- My little brother is a .... He always bothers me. 2015 الغربية - إدارة كفر الزيات

a best b good c pest d post

7- You shouldn't take your brother's things .... asking. 2015 القليوبية - إدارة قليوب

a with b without c for d at

8- Nada .... a maths test once a week. 2016 البحيرة - إدارة دمنهور

a takes b meets c bakes d feeds

4 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one:

					Answer
1	desk	month	week	year	....
2	father	sister	pest	mother	....
3	park	garden	zoo	meet	....
4	forget	hair	give	bake	....
5	serious	little	maths	patient	....

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: 2020 المنيا - إدارة مغاغة

There is a pest in our class at school. His name is Hossam. He follows us all the time and always bothers us. He takes our things without asking. Our teacher thinks that Hossam bothers us because he wants attention. He told us to be patient and to spend time with him.

A- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1- Hossam bothers them because he wants ....

a to play b attention c spend time d make friends

2- Hossam taked things .... asking.

a without b with c when d where

B- Answer the following questions:

3- What did their teacher tell them?

....

4- Who is the pest?

....

6 Write an email of SEVEN (7) sentences:

Write an email to your friend Hala telling her that your sister is ill in hospital. She has the flu. Your name is Esmat and your email address is esmat55@yahoo.com and your friend's email address is hala31@hotmail.com.

New Message

To .... Cc Bcc

From ....

Subject ....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1- tells - be - My - to - patient - mum - me. البحيرة - إدارة كوم حمادة 2016

....

2- get - I - a month - once - a haircut. الشرقية - إدارة كفر صقر 2018

....

8 Punctuate the following:

1- I m older than my brother Adham

....

2- Does ali get a haircut at the barber's

....

Listening materials

Exercises Lesson 1



1 Listen and circle:

1- How is your brother? - He is ill.
2- How is the weather? - It's cold.
3- Why are you going home? - Because it's starting to rain.
4- How's your family? - They're fine.

2 Listen and complete:

Ramy : Hi, Mr. Adel.
Mr. Adel : Hello, Ramy. Have a seat. How's your **family**?
Ramy : They're fine. But my sister has the **flu**.
Mr. Adel : I'm sorry to hear that. Is it **serious**?
Ramy : No, it isn't. She's doing **better** today.
Mr. Adel : Good!

Exercises Lesson 3

1 Listen and circle:

1- How often do they take medicine? - They take medicine three times a day.
2- How often does he get a haircut? - He gets a haircut once a month.
3- How often do you give a speech? - Once a year.
4- How often does she feed the birds? - Twice a day.

2 Listen and complete:

Sara : Good morning. Do you ever listen to music?
Fatma : No, I **hardly** ever listen to music.
Sara : **What** do you do at the weekend?
Fatma : I go out for a **walk** or watch TV.
Sara : How **often** do you watch TV?
Fatma : Three times a week.

Exercises Lesson 4

1 Listen and circle:

1- What does your brother do? - He always follows me.
2- Who bothers you? - My little brother.
3- How often do you visit the museum? - Once a month.
4- Who has a big problem? - Crazy.

2 Listen and complete:

Hazem : I have a big problem, Emad.
Emad : **What** is it?
Hazem : My little brother always **bothers** me.
Emad : What does he **do**?
Hazem : He always follows me and takes my things.
Emad : I think he wants your **attention**.
Hazem : I'll try to help him.

أسئلة مجمعة من اختبارات الاعوام السابقة

1 Listen and circle:

1- Do you think it's going to rain? - Maybe. It's getting cloudy.
2- How are you? - I'm fine.
3- How often do you go swimming? - I go swimming three times a week.
4- Do you think it will rain? - Maybe. It's getting cloudy.

2 Listen and complete:

Kamal : Hi, Mr Samy.
Mr Samy : Hello, Kamal. **Have** a seat.
Kamal : Oh! It's **cold** today.
Mr Samy : Do you **think** it's going to rain?
Kamal : Maybe. It's getting cloudy.
Mr Samy : **How** is your family?
Kamal : They're fine. But my brother had an accident.

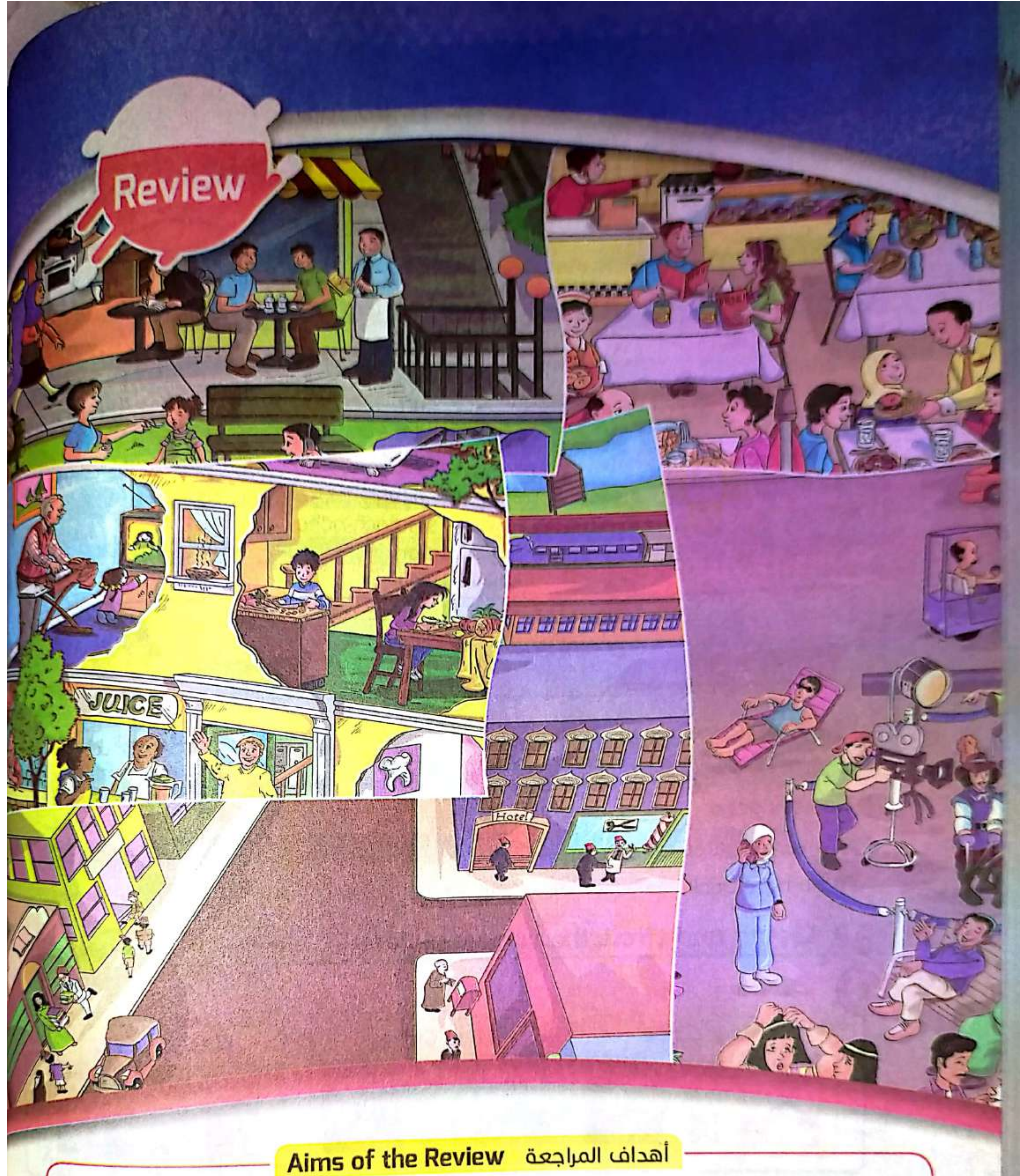
Test 7 Unit 5

1 Listen and circle:

1- Do you think it's going to rain? - Maybe. It's cold today.
2- How often do you get a haircut? - Once a month.
3- Who tells Crazy to be patient? - Her mother.
4- How often do you go fishing? - Twice a week.

2 Listen and complete:

Huda : Hi, Mona.
Mona : Hello, Huda. **Have** a seat.
Huda : Is it cold today?
Mona : That's right. It is 20 **degrees**.
Huda : Do you **think** it is going to rain?
Mona : Maybe. How is your **family**?
Huda : They are fine.



Aims of the Review أهداف المراجعة

Conversation Time Review Lesson 1 - SB P.31/WB:P.36

- participate in a conversation
- identify meaning of a conversation
- recognise and produce vocabulary

- المشاركة فى محادثة
- التعرف على معنى محادثة
- التعرف على معانى كلمات جديدة واستخدامها



Vocabulary مفردات

clerk	موظف / كاتب	video	شريط فيديو
photograph	صورة فوتوغرافية	sick	مريض
special exhibition	عرض خاص	garlic soup	شوربة ثوم
tour	جولة سياحية	message	رسالة
opening hours	ساعات العمل	theatre	مسرح
museum	متحف	busy	مشغول
help	يساعد / مساعدة	hurt	يجرح / يؤذى
ready	جاهز / مستعد	lake	بحيرة
chicken soup	شوربة دجاج	fall	يسقط
kinds of	أنواع من	enough	كافٍ
the best	الأفضل	stomach-ache	ألم بالمعدة
delicious	لذيذ / شهي	diary	مذكرات يومية
bored	يشعر بالملل	well	حسنًا

Read and learn اقرأ وتعلم

You're welcome.	عفواً./على الرحب والسعة.
today's special	طبق اليوم
Sounds good.	يبدو جيداً.
I'll see you later.	سأراك لاحقًا.
I'll be right back.	سوف أعود حالاً.

(A) Listen and circle the correct picture: استمع ثم ضع دائرة على الصورة الصحيحة :



1

a- New Cairo
Photo Exhibition
11:00
2:30
5:15





1. **Clerk** : Good morning, Cairo Museum. How can I help you?
   Kareem : Hi. Do you have a special exhibition today?
   Clerk : Yes, we do. It's an exhibition of old photographs of Cairo.
   Kareem : Are there any tours?
   Clerk : Yes. Tours are at 11:00, 2:30, and 5:00.
   Kareem : Thanks for your help.
   Clerk : You're welcome.

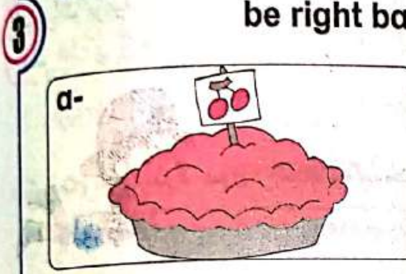
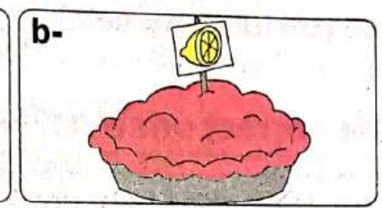
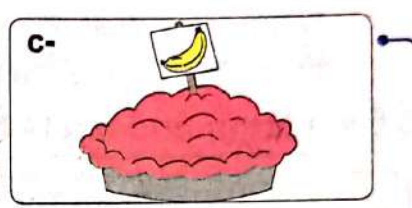
2





2. **Waiter** : Hello. Are you ready to order?
Mrs Samy : I think so. I'll have a bowl of chicken soup.
Waiter : I'm sorry. We don't have chicken soup today. We have garlic soup.
Mrs Samy : Oh, I don't like garlic. Hmm. What's today's special?
Waiter : Spaghetti and meatballs.
Mrs Samy : Sounds good. I'll have spaghetti and orange juice.
Waiter : Okay. Spaghetti and meatballs, and a glass of orange juice. I'll be right back.

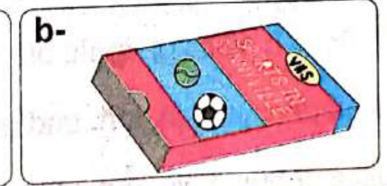
3

a- 
b- 
c- 

3. **Baker** : Hi. Can I help you?
Man : Yes, please. What kinds of pies do you have?
Baker : We have lemon, peach, and cherry.
Man : How about apple? I love apple pie.
Baker : Sorry, we're out of apple.
Man : Oh. How much are the cherry pies?
Baker : They're L.E 10 each.
Man : Okay, I'll take a cherry pie.
Baker : Great!

4

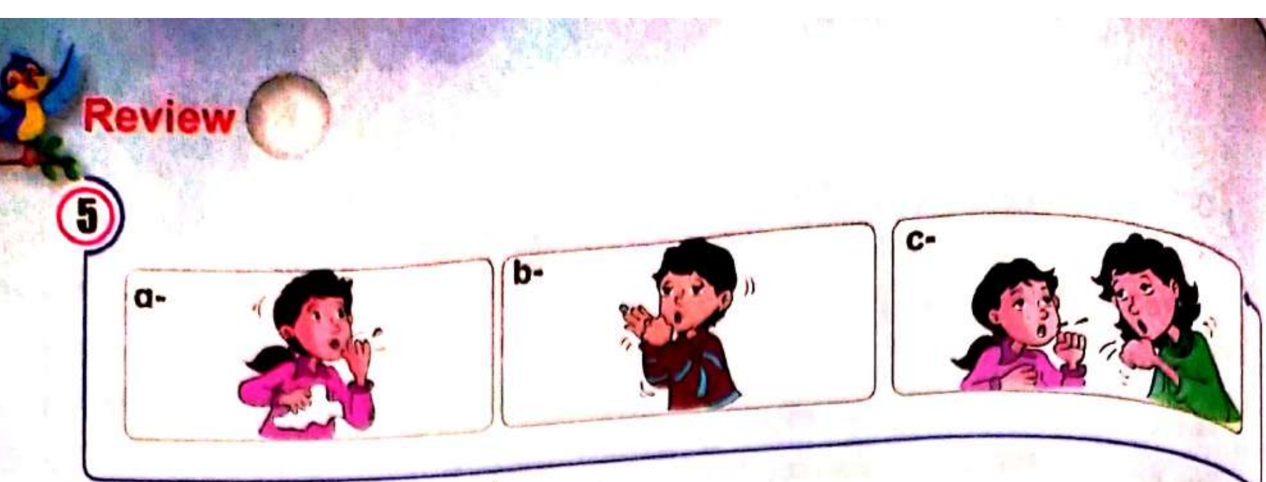
a- 

b- 
c- 

4. **Mrs Samy** : Hello?
Woman : Hello. May I speak to Mona, please?
Mrs Samy : I'm sorry. She's not in right now.
Woman : Can you take a message?
Mrs Samy : Sure. Who's calling?
Woman : This is Mrs. Doaa at the Cairo Library. We have Sports in Cairo now.
Mrs Samy : Is that a book?
Woman : No. It's a video.
Mrs Samy : Okay. I'll give her the message.

Review

5



5. Samy : Hi, Kareem!
Kareem : Hi, Samy. How are you?
Samy : Fine, thanks. How are you?
Kareem : I'm good. How's your family?
Samy : My mother and sister are sick.
Kareem : I'm sorry to hear that. What's the matter?
Samy : They have the flu.
Kareem : Oh. Is your brother sick, too?
Samy : No, he isn't sick.
Kareem : Good!
Samy : Well, I'll see you later, Kareem!
Kareem : Okay. Bye!

B Listen and circle the correct answer: استمع ثم ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة

1. Clerk : Cairo Theatre. How can I help you?
Mona : Hi. What time is the film today?
Clerk : 4:15.
Mona : 4:50?
Clerk : No. 4:15.
Mona : Oh. Thank you.

4:10 (4:15) 4:50

2. Waiter : Hello. Are you ready to order?
Mrs Samy : I think so. I'll have a piece of apple pie and a glass of orange juice.
Dr Samy : I'll have a piece of apple pie, too, and a cup of coffee.
Mona : I'll have a piece of apple pie and a glass of orange juice.
Waiter : All right. That's three pieces of apple pie, one glass of orange juice, and two cups of coffee.
Mrs Samy : No, no. We want two glasses of orange juice and one cup of coffee.
Waiter : Okay. I'll be right back.

2 glasses 3 glasses 4 glasses



3. **Baker** : Hi. Can I help you?
Woman : Yes, please. I'd like a lemon pie and an apple pie.
Baker : Okay. That's 30 pounds.
Woman : 13 pounds?
Baker : No, 30 pounds.
Woman : Okay. Here you are.
Baker : Thank you.

13 33 30

4. **Mrs Samy** : Hello?
Girl : Hello. May I speak to Mona, please?
Mrs Samy : She's not in right now.
Girl : Can you take a message, please? This is Emiley Chin. My number is 987-9876.
Mrs Samy : Did you say 987-9867?
Girl : No, it's 987-9876.
Mrs Samy : Got it. I'll give her the message.

987-9867 978-9876 987-9876

Sokkara's Diary

SB pages 32 - 33

(A) Listen and read along. Then look at the pictures and write the days of the week:

• استمع واقرأ مباشرة ثم انظر إلى الصور واكتب أيام الاسبوع.

(1) Day: ....Monday.............................

Today I went to a restaurant with Sokkar. He had four slices of roast beef, two bowls of chicken soup, and three pieces of apple pie. Sokkar loves eating! He eats too much. He's always in the mood for ice cream, too.



Friday

2 Day: ....

Today I was busy. I bought groceries, did laundry, and ironed all my clothes. Then I baked bread and made dinner. Sokkar visited me and ate all the bread. He never has dinner by himself!


Monday

3 Day: ....

Today Sokkar and I visited the Food School. We took the underground. There was a baking class. Sokkar baked an apple pie. Sokkar sliced apples by himself. He hurt his finger. It wasn't serious.


Tuesday

4 Day: ....

Sokkar and I walked to the park today. We took a nap near the lake. Sokkar got a sunburn. Then we fed the birds and Sokkar fell into the lake. Tomorrow I'm going to stay home by myself!


Thursday

B Listen and read along. Then look at the pictures and write the days of the week:

استمع واقرأ ثم انظر إلى الصور واكتب أيام الاسبوع.

1 Day: ....

Today I went to a restaurant with Sokkara. She had one bowl of fruit salad and a cup of coffee. She doesn't eat enough. She's too thin. Tomorrow I'm going to go to her house and make dinner with her.


Thursday

2 Day: ....

I ate too much at Sokkara's house on Tuesday night. I had a stomach-ache this morning. I had a bowl of ice cream for lunch. It was delicious! Ice cream is the best medicine.


Monday

3 Day: ....

There was a baking class at the Food School today. I made an apple pie. I had an accident. I hurt my finger. But my pie was delicious. Sokkara liked it, too. I'm happy.


Wednesday

4) Day: ....

It was 30 degrees today. I went to Sokkara's house. She wanted to stay home by herself. I went to the park by myself. It wasn't fun. Then Sokkara came to the park because she was bored at home. We had a good time.



Saturday

Word Time and Focus Time Review

SB page 34

A) Read and write the words:

اقرأ واكتب الكلمات:

1- Does he ever take a nap?

Yes, he [o][f][t][e][(n)] takes a nap.

2- Your teeth hurt. You go to the [ ][ ][ ][ ][ ][( )][ ].

3- I can [( )][ ][( )][■][ ][■][ ][ ][ ][ ][ ] by myself.

4- I'll have two pieces of [ ][ ][ ][ ][ ][■][( )][ ][( )]

5- She had a glass of orange [ ][ ][ ][( )][ ].

6- There's a library beside the [ ][ ][( )][ ][ ][ ].

7- I [ ][ ][ ][( )][ ][ ][■][ ][ ][( )][ ][ ] by myself.

8. There's a [ ][ ][ ][( )] near the train station.

B) Look at A. Write the letters in the circles. Unscramble the name of Mona's lunch.



I have a cold. I'm staying home today. Mum is making a delicious lunch for me. What is it?

n ○ ○ ○ ○ ○ ○ ○ ○ ○ ○



A- Revision on Vocabulary
مراجعة على المفردات



Public buildings أماكن عامة

school	مدرسة	train station	محطة القطار
barber's shop	محل الحلاقة	post office	مكتب البريد
bank	بنك	pavement	رصيف (شارع)
hotel	فندق	bridge	كوبرى
library	مكتبة (للقراءة والاستعارة)	theatre	مسرح

Prepositions of places حروف جر للأماكن

beside	بجوار	behind	خلف
across from	على الجانب الآخر	in front of	أمام
near	بالقرب من / قريب من	above	فوق / أعلى

Food and drinks اطعمة ومشروبات

steak	شريحة لحم	roast beef	لحم بقرى مشوى
baked potato	بطاطس فى الفرن	chicken soup	شوربة دجاج
salad	سلطة	orange juice	عصير برتقال
spaghetti	مكرونة اسباجتى	bread	خبز
meatballs	كرات اللحم	lemonade	عصير ليمون
soup	شوربة	roast turkey	ديك رومى مشوى
rice	أرز	fruit salad	سلطة فواكه
sandwich	ساندويتش	coffee	قهوة
pizza	بيتزا	apple pie	فطيرة تفاح
water	مياه	pasta	مكرونة
tomatoes	طماطم	dessert	التحلية
pickle	مخلل	bread	خبز
ice cream	آيس كريم	chocolate	شيكولاته

Cooking food طرق تسوية الطعام

rare	ناقص الطهى	well done	جيد الطهى
medium	متوسط الطهى		

Adjectives صفات

delicious	شهى / لذيذ	free	مجانى
ready	جاهز	clean	نظيف
good	جيد	open	مفتوح
the best	الأفضل	real	حقيقى
fresh	طازج	nice	لطيف
expensive	غالى الثمن	great	عظيم
sure	متأكد	sorry	آسف

Daily Activities أنشطة يومية

walk to school	يمشى إلى المدرسة	slice fruit	يقطع الفواكة إلى شرائح
do laundry	يقوم بغسل الملابس	wash my hair	اغسل شعرى
go to the dentist	يذهب إلى طبيب الأسنان	take a bus	يركب أتوبيس
chop vegetables	يقطع الخضراوات	buy groceries	يشترى سلع البقالة
iron a shirt	يكوى قميص	stay home	يبقى بالمنزل

Verbs and Nouns أفعال تأتي مع أسماء

wear a wig	يرتدى باروكة	put on make-up	تضع ماكياج
get a sunburn	يصاب بحروق الشمس	sign autographs	يوقع أوتوجرافات
take a nap	يأخذ غفوة	drive a sports car	يقود سيارة رياضية
listen to music	يستمع إلى الموسيقى	make friends	يكون صداقات
have an accident	يتعرض لحادث	talk on the phone	يتحدث في التليفون
feed the birds	يطعم الطيور	read a newspaper	يقرأ جريدة
take medicine	يأخذ دواء	meet a friend	يقابل صديق
visit a museum	يزور متحفًا	take the underground	يركب المترو
give a speech	يلقى خطابًا	take a maths test	يأخذ امتحان رياضيات
bake bread	يخبز الخبز (العيش)	get a haircut	يقص شعره (لدى حلاق)

Weather الطقس

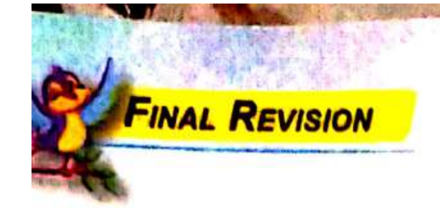
cold	بارد	rain	ممطر، مطر
degree	درجة (الحرارة)	cloudy	ملبد بالسحب (غائم)

Expressions تعبيرات

Have a seat.	تفضل بالجلوس.	do better	يتحسن (يحقق أداء أفضل)
go home	يذهب للمنزل	It's getting cloudy.	تزداد الغيوم
spend time	يقضي وقت	It's not fair.	هذا ليس عدلاً
all the time	طوال الوقت	'd better = had better	من الأفضل
be back	يرجع	right now	الآن

Other words كلمات أخرى

serious	خطير	today	اليوم
flu	برد / انفلونزا	fine	بخير
patient	صبور	pest	شخص مزعج
older	أكبر في العمر	crazy	مجنون
tonight	الليلة	big problem	مشكلة كبيرة
have a good time	يقضي وقت ممتع	adventure	مغامرة
film studios	استديوهات الأفلام	rehearse	يؤدي بروفة فيلم أو مسرحية
actor	ممثل	scene	مشهد في فيلم
film star	نجم سينمائي	message	رسالة
supermarket	سوبرماركت	shop	محل
go home	يذهب للمنزل	money	نقود
trolley	الترولي (عربة المشتراوات أو الحقائب)	leave	يغادر
grocery list	قائمة مشتريات البقالة	checkout	مكتب الدفع في سوبرماركت
checkout line	طابور مراجعة (الحساب)	grocer's	محل البقالة
bookstores(=) bookshop	مكتبة لبيع الكتب	toothache	ألم الأسنان





B- Revision on Grammar
مراجعة على القواعد



1

There is / are (مضارع) يوجد

There was / were (ماضى) كان يوجد

There is a bank. (مفرد) ➡ There are two banks. (جمع)

There was a school. (مفرد) ➡ There were three schools. (جمع)

للسؤال بمعنى "هل يوجد..؟" أو "هل كان يوجد..؟" نستخدم:

Is / Are there .....? هل يوجد...؟

Was / Were there ....? هل كان يوجد...؟

- Is there a post office near the library?
  - Yes, there is. (اثبات) / - No, there isn't. (نفى)
- Are there two bridges beside your house?
  - Yes, there are. / - No, there aren't.
- Was there a theatre behind the train station?
  - Yes, there was. / - No, there wasn't.
- Were there schools across from the hospital?
  - Yes, there were. / - No, there weren't.

2 Countable & Uncountable nouns الأسماء التى تعد والتى لا تعد

Countable nouns اسماء تعد	Uncountable nouns أسماء لا تعد
• تأتى إما مفردة أو جمع	• دائمًا مفردة
• تجمع بإضافة s / es / ies / ves pen ⟶ pens / glass ⟶ glasses candy ⟶ candies / loaf ⟶ loaves	• تجمع بإضافة ألفاظ التجزئة a can of / a piece of/ a cup of
• نسأل عنها باستخدام How many? How many loaves of bread did he have? He had two loaves of bread.	• نسأل عنها باستخدام How much? How much bread did he have? He had two loaves of bread.

• راجع ألفاظ التجزئة والحاويات:

a can of علبة من	a glass of كوب من	a bottle of زجاجة من
a piece of قطعة من	a cup of فنجان من	a loaf of رغيف من
a bowl of سلطانية من	a slice of شريحة من	

3 Reflexive pronouns الضمائر المنعكسة (التوكيدية)

• تستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة للتأكيد على من قام بالفعل وأنه قام به بمفرده ودون مساعدة أحد .

ضمائر الفاعل	الضمائر التوكيدية	ضمائر الفاعل	الضمائر التوكيدية (المنعكسة)
I	myself	You أنت	yourself
He	himself	You أنتم	yourselves
She	herself	We نحن	ourselves
It	itself	They هم / هن	themselves

4 The Past Simple زمن الماضى البسيط

١- يعبر زمن الماضى البسيط عن شيء بدأ وانتهى فى الماضى.

٢- يتكون زمن الماضى البسيط بإضافة d أو ed لمصدر الأفعال المنتظمة regular verbs :

• وهناك أفعال غير منتظمة irregular verbs تحفظ كما هى :

٣- غالبًا ما يستخدم زمن الماضى البسيط مع الكلمات الآتية:

yesterday أمس - once ذات مرة - (a week - two years) ago منذ

[last الماضي (week - month - year)] - in 1998 (سنة ماضية)

٤- للسؤال نستخدم

Did + فاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل ..?

• Did she chop the vegetables? Yes, she did. / No, she didn't.

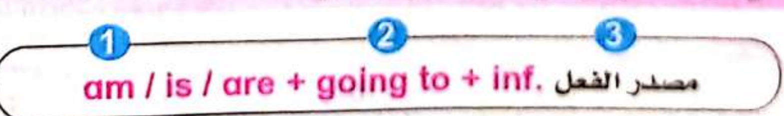
٥- للنفى نستخدم:

فاعل + didn't (= did not) + inf. مصدر الفعل

• I didn't walk to school by myself.

5 going to

• تستخدم going to بمعنى سوف للتعبير عن فعل مخطط له فى المستقبل .



• I'm going to wash my hair at 9:15.

6 The Present Simple زمن المضارع البسيط

• يعبر زمن المضارع البسيط عن حقيقة fact أو عادة habit.
• يتكون زمن المضارع البسيط من مصدر الفعل مع الفاعل الجمع ونضيف "s" للفعل مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب، مثال ذلك:

I, You, We, They, اسم جمع	➡	drive , wear ....
He, She, It, اسم مفرد	➡	drives, wears ....

• في حالة السؤال بـ "هل ؟" في زمن المضارع البسيط مع: (اسم جمع , They , I , We , You) نستخدم:

Do + الفاعل + مصدر الفعل........?

في الإجابة

Yes, + الفاعل + do. (للإثبات)
No, + الفاعل + don't. (للنفي)

• Do you talk on the phone? Yes, I do. / No, I don't.

- في حالة السؤال بمعنى "هل .....؟" في زمن المضارع البسيط مع :

• (اسم مفرد ,He, She, It) نستخدم:

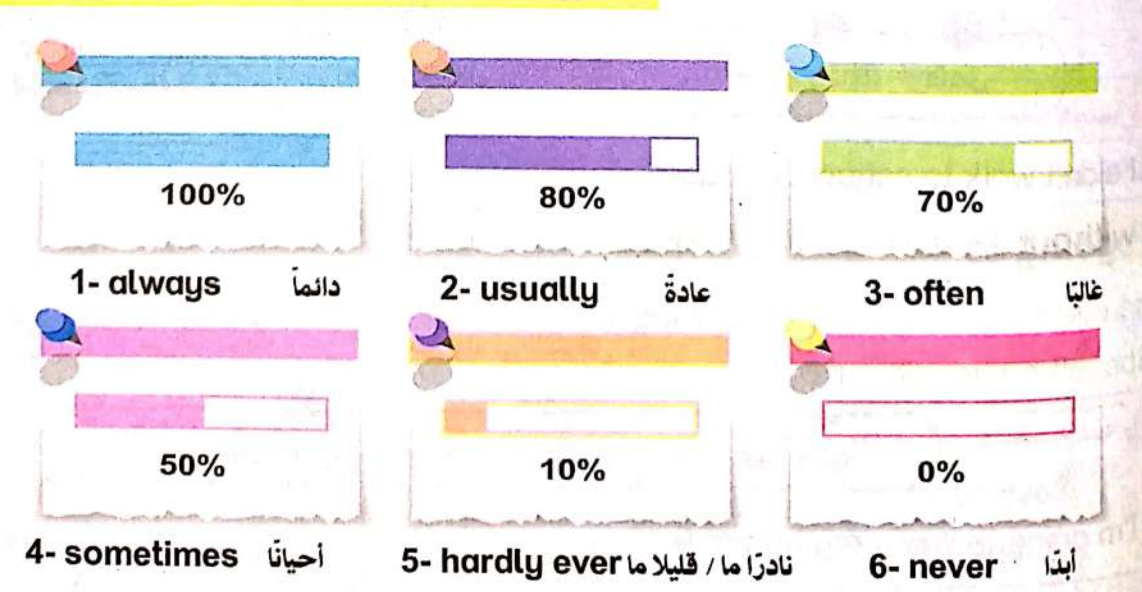
Does + الفاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل...?

في الإجابة

Yes, + الفاعل + does. (للإثبات)
No, + الفاعل + doesn't. (للنفي)

• Does she take a nap?
• Yes, she does. / No, she doesn't.

7 Adverbs of Frequency ظروف التكرار



8 Do / Does + فاعل + ever + inf ...?

• تستخدم ظروف التكرار للتعبير عن عدد مرات تكرار الفعل.

- We sometimes go to the restaurant.
- She never helps her mother.

– للسؤال بـ " هل ..؟" فى زمن المضارع البسيط مع ظروف التكرار نستخدم (ever):

- Do you ever get a sunburn?

  Yes, I always / usually / sometimes / often get a sunburn.

  No, I hardly ever / never get a sunburn.

• لاحظ استخدام كلمة ever فى السؤال ولا تأتى فى الإجابة.

• لاحظ أن hardly ever / never تستخدم فى حالة الإجابة المنفية مع No ولا تستخدم not فى الجملة.

9 'd better + inf. مصدر الفعل (يُفضل أن / من الأفضل أن..)

- I'd better go home.

10 How often .....? كم عدد المرات....؟

– عند السؤال بـ How often? فى زمن المضارع البسيط نستخدم:

How often + { do / does } + فاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل ...?

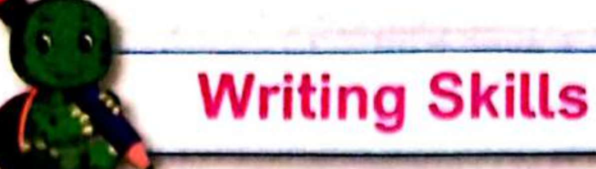
• والإجابة تكون كالتالى:

Once	a	day	مرة يوميًا
Twice		week	مرتان أسبوعيًا
Three times		month	ثلاث مرات شهريًا
Four times		year	أربع مرات سنويًا

- How often does she read a newspaper?
- She reads a newspaper once a day.

11 without بدون + v + ing / noun

- He takes my things without asking.
- She left home without her pen.



Writing Skills

A Write a paragraph of SEVEN (7) sentences:

1 **"The Egyptian Museum"**

I go to the Egyptian Museum every week. It costs 10 pounds to get in. Children under five are free. There are a lot of things there. I can see the mummy rooms. I like it very much. The museum is nice.

2 **"My town"**

My town is big and clean. I like it very much. In my street, there is a lot of places. There is a bookshop. The barber's shop is between the post office and the train station. There is a big bank. My school is near my house.

3 **"A big restaurant"**

I was hungry yesterday. I went to a big restaurant near my house. The restaurant was big and clean. I had roast beef. It was delicious. I had orange juice. The prices were good.

4 **"Different activities"**

My family did a lot of things yesterday. I chopped vegetables. My sister sliced fruit. My grandmother ironed a shirt. My brother did the laundry. My mother baked bread. It was a nice day.

5 **"A film studio"**

Last Friday, I went to a film studio. It was very big. I saw a lot of actors. The actor wore a wig. He put on make-up. He signed autographs. It was so cool.

7 **"My sister has the flu"**

I met my uncle yesterday. He was reading a newspaper. It was getting cloudy. It was 23 degrees. He asked me about my sister. She had the flu. She is doing better today.



Write an email of SEVEN (7) sentences:



Write an email to your friend Nader. Telling him about your favourite food. Your name is Sherif and your email address is sherif25@yahoo.com and your friend's email address is nader56@hotmail.com.

New Message

To nader56@hotmail.com **Cc** **Bcc**

From sherif25@yahoo.com

Subject My favourite food

Dear Nader,

I'm pleased to write to you. I'd like to tell you about my favourite food. I like fish and salad. I can cook my food by myself. I like lemonade, too. My favourite food is healthy. I like healthy food. It's delicious.

Yours,

Sherif



Write an email to your friend Yasser, who lives in Cairo, to tell him about your visit to a supermarket in your town. Your name is Ibrahim and your email address is ibrahim47@hotmail.com and your friend's email address is yasser82@yahoo.com.

New Message

To yasser82@yahoo.com **Cc** **Bcc**

From ibrahim47@hotmail.com

Subject My visit to the supermarket

Dear Yasser,

How are you and your family? Yesterday I went to a big supermarket in my town. My father gave me a list. I bought a lot of groceries. I went to the checkout. I paid for the groceries. Then, I went home by taxi. My father was happy. Please write to me.

Yours,

Ibrahim

3. Write an email to your friend Dalia to tell her about the accident you saw in the street last Friday. Your name is Hager and your email address is hager311@gmail.com and your friend's email address is dalia152@hotmail.com.

New Message

To	dalia152@hotmail.com
From	hager311@gmail.com
Subject	The accident I saw in the street

Cc Bcc

Dear Dalia,

I hope you are fine. Yesterday my grandfather had an accident. When he ran to ride the bus, he fell off and broke his leg. We took him to the hospital. The doctor saw him. The doctor gave him a lot of medicine. We were very sad. We went home late. See you soon.

Yours,

Hager

4. Write an email to your friend Walid telling him about the maths test you had last month. Your name is Mustafa and your email address is mustafa13@yahoo.com and your friend's email address is walid28@gmail.com.

New Message

To	walid28@gmail.com
From	mustafa13@yahoo.com
Subject	The maths test I had last month

Cc Bcc

Dear Walid,

I'm happy to write to you. I'd like to tell you about the maths test I had last month. I studied hard before I took the maths test. My father helped me because he is a maths teacher. I like maths. It's my favourite subject. the test was easy. I got high marks. Write to me soon.

Yours,

Mustafa

General EXERCISES

تدريبات

أسئلة عامة على المنهج بأكمله شاملة كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وامتحانات المحافظات للأعوام السابقة

Question 1 السؤال الأول بالامتحان

1 Listen and circle:



نص الاستماع فى آخر الكتاب | الاقصر - إدارة الاقصر 2019

1-
1. a. He's not right now. b. I'm sorry. I don't know.
2. a. To take the bus. b. To take the train.
3. a. How often do you go swimming? b. How often do you get a haircut?
4. a. Who invented the first ice cream? b. Who invented the first telephone?

2-
1. a. They're fine. b. They're ill. They have the flu.
2. a. Yes, he does. b. No, he doesn't.
3. a. Was there a bank near the theatre? b. Was there a bridge near the library?
4. a. How much does it cost to get in? b. How much does it cost for adults?

Question 2 السؤال الثاني بالامتحان

2 Listen and complete:



نص الاستماع فى آخر الكتاب | الغربية - إدارة شرق طنطا 2020

1 Omar : Hello. May I speak to Ahmed, please?
Ali : Hello. He is not in ❶ .... now.
Omar : ❷ .... time will he be back?
Ali : I'm ❸ .... , I don't know.
Omar : ❹ .... you take a message?
Ali : Sure.

المنوفية - إدارة أشمون 2018

2 Samar : Good morning. ❶ .... is your mother?
Nahla : Good morning. She is very ❷ ....
Samar : Did she see a ❸ ....?
Nahla : Yes, she did.
Samar : What did he say?
Nahla : He ❹ .... her some medicine.

Question 3 السؤال الثالث بالامتحان

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- I got a haircut at the .... shop.
a baker's b dentist's c barber's d farmer's

2- What are .... hours?
a you b we c your d him

3- We .... go to school on Friday. It's a holiday. (2017 البحيرة - إدارة ايتاى البارود)
a every b never c always d usually

4- The museum is open .... except on Sundays.
a day b dance c daily d dark

5- Study English with us and .... fun.
a take b have c give d do

6- What's the homework .... tomorrow?
a from b with c for d by

7- Where did you .... yesterday? (2016 الشرقية - إدارة ديرب نجم)
a went b going c to go d go

8- She's going to have a .... of roast turkey.
a loaf b glass c slice d bottle

9- How .... glasses of water did Samir have?
a much b many c often d long

10- Salah had two loaves of ....
a chicken b pie c bread d turkey

11- How .... fruit salad did Amira have?
a often b much c many d old

12- He went to the .... to send a letter.
a bank b library c post office d bridge

13- We can borrow and read books at the ....
a park b zoo c library d bank

14- Are you open .... Fridays?
a on b for c in d with

15- My school is near so I .... to it every day.
a stay b walk c talk d buy

16- Nesma always .... the laundry for her mother.
a gives b makes c does d goes

17- She .... the vegetables before cooking them.
a ironed b chopped c stayed d made

18- Samar and Yara don't .... on make-up.
a have b tell c take d put

19- My father bought the .... from the supermarket.
a books b groceries c shirts d songs

20 - Actors sometimes .... a wig.
a listen b wear c drive d sign

21 - Hend never .... a sports car.
a drives b puts c gives d talks

22- Sameh is .... his shirt. He is going to school.
a slicing b staying c ironing d reading

23- I have many friends. I like to .... friends.
a do b make c come d talk

24- I feel tired. I'm going to .... a nap.
a make b take c watch d stay

25- Ahmed is busy. He is talking .... the phone.
a in b to c on d with

26- Ahmed Helmy always signs........................ .He is my favourite actor.
a books b letters c autographs d tests

27- We didn't .... an accident. WB page 20
a drive b have c put d sign

28- In the park, children .... birds. 2020 أسيوط - إدارة منفلوط
a feed b take c bake d visit

29- My father .... the newspaper every day.
a writes b listens c reads d talks

30- My sister has the flu. She........................ medicine twice a day.
a gives b takes c goes d cooks

31- My uncle .... the underground to his work.
a visits b takes c gives d feeds

32- I .... a speech to my class yesterday about helping our mothers.
a fed b got c put d gave

33- .... kinds of pies do you have?
a When b Where c What d Who

34- We're .... of cherry.
a in b out c on d from

35- How .... are the pies? Ten pounds.
a many b long c much d often

36- That's too .... I can't buy it.
a expensive b cheap c nice d fine

37- I sliced fruit by ....

a himself b myself c herself d yourself

38- .... walked to school by herself.

a He b They c She d We

39- We bought groceries by ....

a myself b yourself c themselves d ourselves

40- My teacher was angry because I .... my book.

a remembered b forgot c got d talked

41- My mother always writes a .... of the things she wants.

a menu b homework c list d test

42- A .... is something that we use in a supermarket to put our groceries in.

a taxi b trolley c truck d train

43- I went to the .... to pay for the groceries.

a class b chair c checkout d library

44- May I .... to Ahmed, please?

a say b speak c tell d take

45- What time will he .... back?

a is b was c be d does

46- What's your .... ? 3551312.

a address b name c number d job

47- I .... ever drive a sports car.

a hard b hardly c fast d late

48- Ayman .... reads stories. He does that all the time.

a never b sometimes c always d ever

49- Hala .... a good time in Alexandria.

a took b had c went d left

50- They make all kinds of films at this ....

a bank b bridge c studio d river

51- Ahmed Meki is a film ....

a moon b star c sun d cloud

52- I watched the actors rehearse a ....

a photo b scene c star d studio

53- Hello, Kamal. .... a seat.

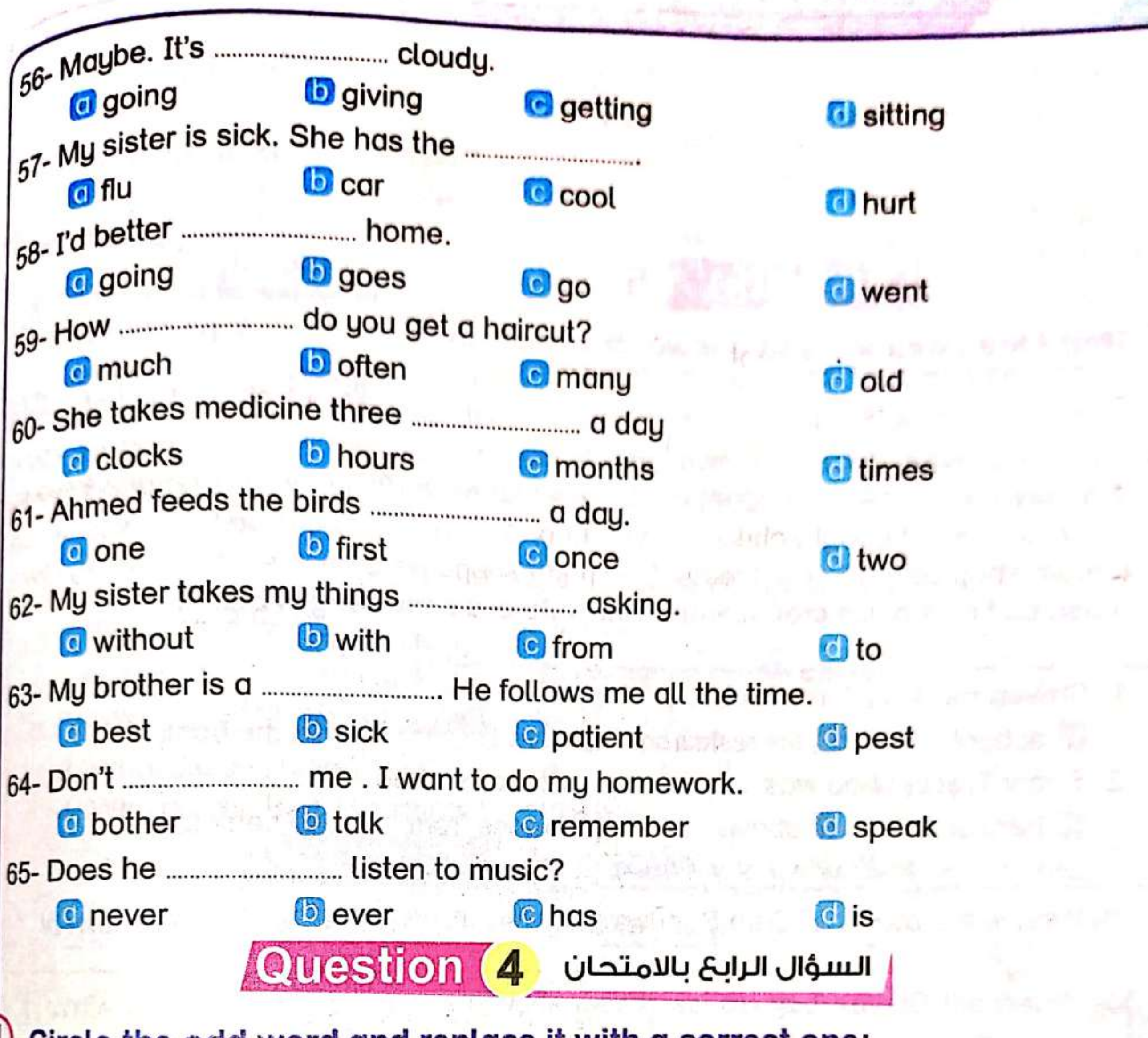
a Have b Make c Do d Help

54- It's hot today. It's 35 ....

a marks b pounds c degrees d numbers

55- Do you think it's .... to rain?

a go b going c goes d went



56- Maybe. It's .... cloudy.

ⓐ going ⓑ giving ⓒ getting ⓓ sitting

57- My sister is sick. She has the ....

ⓐ flu ⓑ car ⓒ cool ⓓ hurt

58- I'd better .... home.

ⓐ going ⓑ goes ⓒ go ⓓ went

59- How .... do you get a haircut?

ⓐ much ⓑ often ⓒ many ⓓ old

60- She takes medicine three .... a day

ⓐ clocks ⓑ hours ⓒ months ⓓ times

61- Ahmed feeds the birds .... a day.

ⓐ one ⓑ first ⓒ once ⓓ two

62- My sister takes my things .... asking.

ⓐ without ⓑ with ⓒ from ⓓ to

63- My brother is a .... He follows me all the time.

ⓐ best ⓑ sick ⓒ patient ⓓ pest

64- Don't .... me . I want to do my homework.

ⓐ bother ⓑ talk ⓒ remember ⓓ speak

65- Does he .... listen to music?

ⓐ never ⓑ ever ⓒ has ⓓ is

Question 4 السؤال الرابع بالامتحان

4 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

				Answer
1 yourself	him	ourselves	themselves	....
2 water	coffee	lemonade	loaf	....
3 forget	crazy	happy	patient	....
4 between	in	swim	under	....
5 May	Saturday	July	March	....
6 teacher	dentist	baker	school	....
7 hotel	library	station	steak	....
8 beside	above	meatballs	near	....
9 dinner	theatre	museum	restaurant	....
10 bowl	cup	bank	bottle	....
11 Sunday	Salem	Tuesday	Monday	....

12 house	open	hospital	bank	....
13 made	found	knew	buy	....
14 summer	winter	rain	spring	....
15 what	do	why	how	....

Question 5 السؤال الخامس بالامتحان

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

WB دمياط - إدارة كفر سعد 2015

1 Hi! I'm Steven Conner. I own an ice cream sandwich shop. It's called Cold Sandwiches. In 1995, I bought my first ice cream churn. I made ice cream at home. Then, in 1999, I bought an ice cream shop. Across from my shop there was an ice cream shop called Snow Treats. Ice cream shops were on every block in my town. I use all kinds of ice cream, from chocolate and strawberry to banana.

A- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1- Steven made ice cream at ....

a school   b the restaurant   c home   d the bank

2- Snow Treats shop was .... Steven's shop.

a beside   b above   c across from   d behind

B- Answer the following questions:

3- Who is the owner of Cold Sandwiches?

....

4- When did Steven buy his ice cream shop?

....

WB

2 My name is Omar. I follow my older brother Ibrahim all the time. I go into Ibrahim's room once a day and take his comic books كتب كوميدية. One day Ibrahim invited his friend Kareem over to play. When Ibrahim and Kareem went outside to play basketball, I went to Ibrahim's room and took a comic book. Ibrahim said, "You always bother me! You are a pest." I didn't know what a pest was. I found my mum and asked, "What's a pest?" My mum said, "A pest bothers people." Then I asked, "Am I a pest?"

A- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1- Omar takes his brother's ....

a comic books   b stories   c films   d shirts

2- Omar .... Ibrahim all the time.

a helps   b follows   c asks   d talks

B- Answer the following questions:

3- How often does Omar take comic books from Ibrahim?

....

4- What did Ibrahim call Omar?

....

المنوفية - إدارة شبين الكوم 2020

③ I had a nice day yesterday. Amina and I went to Hadramout new restaurant. Grandpa Ali is the chef. He made a great lunch. I had a bowl of soup, rice with meat and a can of lemonade. Amina had two loaves of bread, one piece of roast turkey and a glass of orange juice. We love Hadramout restaurant because their food is the best in town.

A- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1- Grandpa Ali is the ....

ⓐ restaurant ⓑ chef ⓒ owner ⓓ teacher

2- Amina had two .... of bread.

ⓐ loaves ⓑ cups ⓒ slices ⓓ bowls

B- Answer the following questions:

3- What did you have? ....

4- Why do you love Hadramout restaurant? ....

Question 6 السؤال السادس بالامتحان

⑥ Write an email of SEVEN (7) sentences:

① Write an email to your friend Gamal to tell him about your visit to the Egyptian Museum. Your name is Hany and your email address is hany97@yahoo.com and your friend's email address is gamal75@hotmail.com. 2018 الفيوم - إدارة اطسا

② Write an email to your friend Hala telling her about the lundch you at a restaurant. Your name is Salwa and your email address is salwa@school.com and your friend's email address is hala@school.com. 2020 كفر الشيخ - إدارة سيدى سالم

③ Write an email to your friend Reham to tell her about your visit to Alexandria. Your name is Noha and your email address is noha32@yahoo.com and your friend's email address is reham137@hotmail.com.

④ Write an email to your friend Sameh to tell him about your sister who is a pest. Your name is Emad and your email address is emad65@hotmail.com and your friend's email address is sameh81@yahoo.com.

⑤ Write an email to your friend Kareem to tell him about your daily activities. Your name is Yasser and your email address is yasser221@gmail.com and your friend's email address is kareem38@yahoo.com.

6 Write an email to your friend Amira to tell her about your visit to a film studio. Your name is Manal and your email address is manal53@hotmail.com and your friend's email address is amira111@yahoo.com.

Question 6 السؤال السادس بالامتحان

Write a paragraph of SEVEN (7) sentences:

"The places in my city"

1 ....

....

....

....

....

....

....

"A big restaurant"

2 ....

....

....

....

....

....

....

"Different activities"

3 ....

....

....

....

....

....

....

"My school"

4 ....

....

....

....

....

....

....

"The Egyptian Museum"

5 ....

....

....

....

....

....

....

"Alexandria Library"

6 ....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Question 7 السؤال السابع بالامتحان

1 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1- looks - It - delicious.

....

2- beside - a library - There's - the - shop - barber's. (الجيزة - إدارة الهرم 2018)

....

3- It's - pounds - for - two - Egyptians.

....

4- today's - What's - special?

....

5- open - on - Are - Fridays - you? (الشرقية - إدارة مشتول السوق 2017)

....

6- cost - How - it - to - get - does - in - much?

....

7- daily - We're - open.

....

8- of - We're - out - cherry.

....

9- any - Do - pies - you - apple - have? أسيوط - إدارة البدارى 2015

....

10- I'm - the - for - in - mood - spaghetti.

....

11- five - Children - under - free - eat.

....

12- you - ready - Are - order - to?

....

13- I - Ahmed - May - to - speak - , please?

....

14- there - Was - park - a school - near - the? قنا - إدارة قنا 2020

....

15- take - message - a - you - Can - , please? القاهرة - إدارة المرج 2017

....

16- you - What - do - are - tomorrow - going to? المنوفية - إدارة شبين الكوم 2020

....

17- a - day - nice - Have.

....

18- three - She - a - day - takes - medicine - times.

....

19- often - How - does - get - he - a haircut?

....

20- family - is - your - How - , Kamal?

....

21- now - right - He's - in - not. الشرقية - إدارة الزقازيق 2017

....

22- for - help - Thanks - your.

....

23- a - **Is** - brother - pest - your?

....

24- you - it's - to - **Do** - think - going - rain?

....

25- him - your - **I'll** - message - give.

....

26- ever - **Does** - a - wear - wig - he?

....

27- getting - it's - **Maybe** - cloudy.

....

28- you - ever - **Do** - drive - a - car - sports ?

....

Question 8 السؤال الثامن بالامتحان

8 Punctuate the following sentences:

1- How can i help you, Ahmed

....

2- How did mazin go to Aswan

....

3- How much bread did seif and Aya have

....

4- i'm cooking my family s lunch now.

....

5- Did rawan and fatma go to the club?

....

6- This is rania s bag.

....

7- Let's visit cairo in the summer

....

8- there're dogs in my father s farm.

....

9- She is Mariem ayman

....

10- yes he is from America.

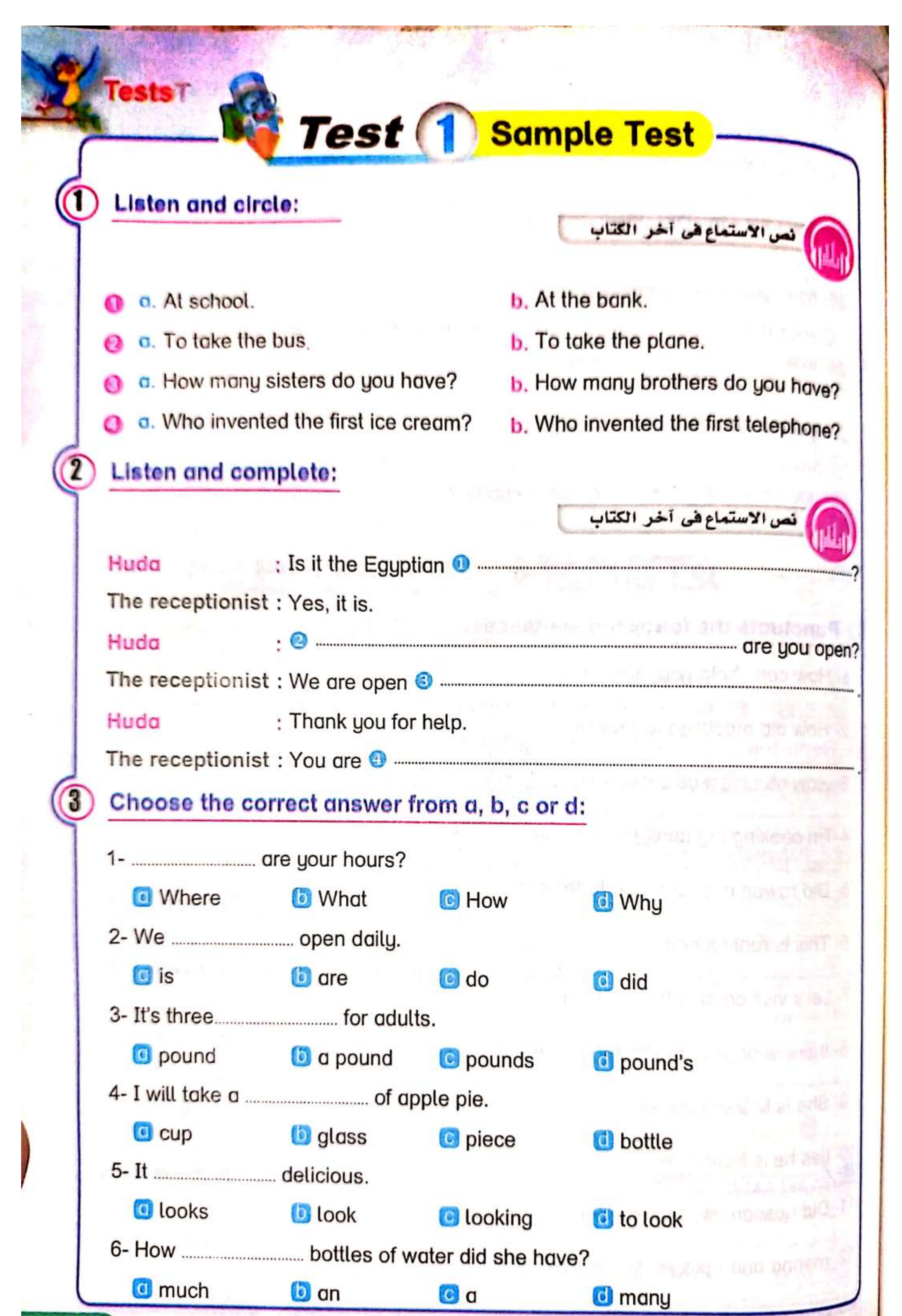
....

11- Did hassan go to alexandria?

....

12- menna and I played tennis last Friday

....



Tests

Test 1 Sample Test

1 Listen and circle:

نص الاستماع فى آخر الكتاب

1. a. At school. b. At the bank.
2. a. To take the bus. b. To take the plane.
3. a. How many sisters do you have? b. How many brothers do you have?
4. a. Who invented the first ice cream? b. Who invented the first telephone?

2 Listen and complete:

نص الاستماع فى آخر الكتاب

Huda : Is it the Egyptian ① ....?
The receptionist : Yes, it is.
Huda : ② .... are you open?
The receptionist : We are open ③ ....
Huda : Thank you for help.
The receptionist : You are ④ ....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- .... are your hours?
a Where b What c How d Why

2- We .... open daily.
a is b are c do d did

3- It's three.................... for adults.
a pound b a pound c pounds d pound's

4- I will take a .... of apple pie.
a cup b glass c piece d bottle

5- It .... delicious.
a looks b look c looking d to look

6- How .... bottles of water did she have?
a much b an c a d many

7- I'm ready ....

(a) order (b) ordering (c) to order (d) ordered

8- I'm going to .... two glasses of orange juice.

(a) do (b) be (c) has (d) have

4 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one:

				Answer
1 swim	eat	sky	play	....
2 summer	winter	rain	spring	....
3 herself	yourself	he	myself	....
4 ironed	bought	washed	chop	....
5 meatballs	steak	salad	juice	....

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

Last weekend, Ali went to the amusement park. He had orange juice. He went on a ride. He saw a dolphin show. He ate cookies. He took some pictures. He was very happy. His family was with him to keep an eye on him. His father does his best to make him happy. His mother also wants him to be happy. He wanted to be a doctor when he grows up.

A- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1- Ali was ....

(a) sad (b) happy (c) tired (d) ill

2- Ali drank a/an .... juice.

(a) apple (b) lemon (c) orange (d) pie

B- Answer the following questions:

3- Where did Ali go at the weekend?

....

4- What did Ali see?

....

6 Write an email of Seven (7) sentences:

Write an email to your friend Hala telling her about the lunch you have at a restaurant. Your name is Salwa. Your email is salwa@school.com and her email is hala@school.com.

New Message

To	....	Cc Bcc
From	....	
Subject	....	

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1 - English - us - have - with - Study - fun - and.

....

4 - tomorrow - the - What's - for - homework?

....

8 Punctuate the following:

1- omnia s mother watches TV before she sleeps.

....

2- what are you doing when you go to the zoo

....



1 Listen and circle:

نص الاستماع فى آخر الكتاب

1. a. A cherry pie. b. A fried fish.
2. a. They are five pounds. b. They are ten pounds.
3. a. How many cups do you have? b. How many glasses do you have?
4. a. What do you eat? b. What do you want to eat?

2 Listen and complete:



نص الاستماع فى آخر الكتاب

Maha : Good morning.
Mother : Good morning.
Maha : 1 .... I speak to Mona, please?
Mother : She is not 2 .... right now.
Maha : What time will she be 3 .... ?
Mother : I'm sorry, I don't 4 ....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- .... do you iron your T-shirt?
a Who b What c How d Which

2- We go to school by ....
a myself b himself c ourselves d yourself

3- .... I help you?
a Am b Are c Have d May

4- The car is .... , it costs a lot of money.
a high b expensive c cheap d bad

5- Where .... Bill go yesterday?
a did b do c is d was

6- My sister doesn't .... on make-up.
a wear b talk c drive d put

7- Does your sister wear a ....?
a cart b wig c make-up d nap

8- She went to the grocer's to buy ....

a fruits b groceries c shirts d cars

4 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one:

				Answer
1 went	chopped	iron	bought	....
2 he	she	we	yourself	....
3 between	under	in	blue	....
4 eat	swim	fly	oranges	....
5 lemon	apple	pie	peach	....

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

Over 30 million people visit New York every year. It is a beautiful city. There are thousand restaurants. There are also many shops. You can see many nice buildings there. Tours there are found everywhere. I was there 3 years ago. I saw many tall buildings there. I made many friends there. The people there are very welcoming.

A- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1- There are many .... buildings in New York.

a ugly b bad c old d nice

2- You can buy there from ....

a shops b tours c homes d museums

B- Answer the following questions:

3- Why do people go to New York?

....

4- What did the writer الكاتب make when he was there?

....

6 Write a paragraph of SEVEN (7) sentences:

"The Egyptian Museum"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1- laundry - themselves - can - They - do - by.

....

2- you - any - Do - pies - have - cherry?

....

8 Punctuate the following:

1- ali played chess but Mona couldn t play.

....

2- can I help you carry this bag

....

Test 3 Sample Test

1 Listen and circle:

نص الاستماع فى آخر الكتاب

1. a. It is cold. b. It is hot.
2. a. He is fine. b. He is ill.
3. a. Do you think it will rain? b. Do you think it is cloudy?
4. a. How often do you go swimming? b. How often do you read a newspaper?

2 Listen and complete:

نص الاستماع فى آخر الكتاب

Asmaa : Good morning, Amira.

Amira : Good morning, Asmaa.

Asmaa : How is your ① .... now?

Amira : She is ② ....

Asmaa : I think that she had the ③ ....

Amira : You ④ .... right.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- .... do you go to a café?

a Who b What c How d How many

2- I take medicine .... a day.

a two b twice c to d too

3- Do you .... bread?

a bake b feed c go d play

4- It is .... to rain.

a go b gone c going d to go

5- Your brother .... you very much.

a loves b colours c starts d adds

6- How often .... she read a newspaper?

a has b have c do d does

7- In the park, children .... birds.

a feed b take c bake d visit

8- She .... a newspaper once a month.

a is read b read c reading d reads

4 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one:

				Answer
1 April	May	June	Sunday	....
2 English	maths	underground	Arabic	....
3 hot	cold	warm	start	....
4 plane	bus	bike	three	....
5 soup	bread	meat	pie	....

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

There is a boy in our class at school. His name is Ali. He follows us all the time and always bothers us. He takes our things without asking. Our teachers told us to be patient. It is not fair. We hate boys like him. We should be honest and fair.

A- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1- Ali is a .... boy.

a bad b nice c cute d fair

2- It is .... for the class to be patient.

a fair b not fair c nice d good

B- Answer the following questions:

3- What is the name of the boy?

....

4- How should we be?

....

5 Write an email of Seven (7) sentences:

Write an email to your friend telling him that your sister is ill. She has the flu in hospital. Your name is Hany. Your email is hany@school.com and his email is friend@school.com.

New Message

To .... Cc Bcc

From ....

Subject ....

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1- visited - Library - yesterday - We - Alexandria.

....

2- often - you - How - read - newspaper - a - do?

....

7 Punctuate the following:

1- Ali's family lives in cairo near the zoo

....

2- where did you go last friday, Ali?

....



Test 4 محافظة القاهرة

إدارة الزاوية الحمراء التعليمية

A. Listening (8 Marks)

1 Listen and circle: (4 marks)



نص الاستماع فى آخر الكتاب

1. a. At school. b. At the bank.
2. a. I'm going to visit my friend. b. I'm going to visit my uncle.
3. a. What do you eat? b. What do you want to eat?
4. a. What are your hours? b. What time do you open?

2 Listen and complete: (4 marks)



نص الاستماع فى آخر الكتاب

Baker : Good morning. Can I help you?

Mona : Yes, please. What ① .... of pies do you have today?

Baker : We have lemon, peach and apple.

Mona : How ② .... are the apple pies?

Baker : They're ten pounds ③ ....

Mona : Okay. I'll ④ .... one.

B. Reading (12 Marks)

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 marks)

1- .... are your hours?

a Where b What c How d Why

2- I'm ready ....

a order b ordering c to order d ordered

3- Does the actor wear a .... ?

a cart b wig c make-up d nap

4- We go to school by ....

a myself b yourself c ourselves d herself

5- The children .... the birds in the yard.

a feed b drive c cut d wear

6- She .... her uncle once a month.

a visit   b visits   c visited   d visiting

7- Do you .... bread?

a bake   b go   c play   d feed

8- A .... is someone who bothers people.

a friend   b barber   c baker   d pest

4 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one: (5 marks)

				Answer
1 water	bread	juice	coffee	....
2 week	month	old	year	....
3 above	on	in	art	....
4 rehearse	actor	make	talk	....
5 hot	thirty	hungry	cold	....

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: (3 marks)

Mr Samy is a famous cook. He is the chef at the best hotel in Alexandria. He likes his job and tries to find new kinds of food to serve. People who eat his food say, "His food is the best in Alexandria." He wants to open a new restaurant. It will be clean and the prices will be good. Kids under six will eat free.

A- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1- Mr Samy tries to find new food to ....

a play   b feed   c open   d serve

2- The prices at the new restaurant will be ....

a delicious   b clean   c good   d free

B- Answer the following questions:

3- Where does Mr Samy work?

....

4- What do people say about Mr Samy's food?

....



C. Writing (10 Marks)

6 Write an email of SEVEN (7) sentences: (7 marks)

Write an email to your friend Hala to tell her about what you do every day. Your name is Mai and your email is mai@yahoo.com. Your friend's email is hala@yahoo.com.

New Message

Cc Bcc

To ....

From ....

Subject ....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: (2 marks)

1- a day - three - She - medicine - times - takes.

....

2- you - ever - Do - to music - listen?

....

8 Punctuate the following: (1 mark)

1- Maybe, it s getting cloudy

....

2- Mona's family went to aswan yesterday

....



Test 5 محافظة الجيزة

إدارة الصف التعليمية

A. Listening (8 Marks)

1 Listen and circle: (4 marks)



نص الاستماع فى آخر الكتاب

1. a. Yes, there was. b. No, there wasn't.
2. a. They are ten pounds each. b. They are five pounds each.
3. a. Who invented ice cream? b. Who invented the sandwich?
4. a. Are you open on Fridays? b. Are you open on Sundays?

2 Listen and complete: (4 marks)



نص الاستماع فى آخر الكتاب

Salma : Hi, Noha.

Noha : Hello, Salma. ① .... a seat.

Salma : ② .... is your sister?

Noha : She has the ③ ....

Salma : ④ .... she see a doctor?

Noha : Yes, she saw a doctor. It isn't serious.

B. Reading (12 Marks)

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 marks)

1- Ali .... goes to school by bus. It's near his house.

a always b never c usually d ever

2- That shop is .... rice today.

a out b of c out of d out off

3- Is the............................ near the post office?

a barber b barbers c barbers' d barber's

4- We go to .... to learn.

a hotel b school c hospital d theatre

5- What time will .... back?

a be he b he be c is he d he is

6- I'm going to .... two glasses of orange juice.

a do b be c has d have

7- Your teacher .... you very much.

a eats b drinks c loves d lives

8- **A:** How .... do you get a haircut? **B:** Once a month.

a much b many c old d often

4 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one: (5 marks)

					Answer
1	near	behind	have	above	....
2	cups	bottles	glasses	doctors	....
3	book	doctor	nurse	dentist	....
4	train	list	car	bus	....
5	summer	winter	hungry	spring	....

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: (3 marks)

"Will you go to the supermarket for me?" said Sally's father. She said, "OK, Dad". She walked to the supermarket. She forgot the list. She ran home to get the list. Then, she ran back to the shop. She put the groceries in the basket. She went to the checkout line. " I forgot the money," she said.

A- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1- Sally put the groceries in the ....

a supermarket b basket c list d checkout

2- Sally forgot the ....

a grocery list b money c shop d list and money

B- Answer the following questions:

3- How did Sally go to the supermarket?

....

4- Why did Sally run home?

....



C. Writing (10 Marks)

6 Write an email of SEVEN (7) sentences: **(7 marks)**

to your friend Fatma to tell her about the Egyptian Museum. Your name is Mona. Your e-mail is mona@yahoo.com and your friend's email is fatma@yahoo.com.

New Message

To .... Cc Bcc

From ....

Subject ....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: **(2 marks)**

1- brother - your - bother - you - Does?

....

2- a restaurant - Dina - had - Huda - and - lunch - at.

....

8 Punctuate the following: **(1 mark)**

1- sami walks to school by himself

....

2- When did you go last friday, Ali

....





إدارة الخانكة التعليمية

A. Listening (8 Marks)

1 Listen and circle: (4 marks)

نص الاستماع فى آخر الكتاب

1. a. She watched a match. b. She watched the actors rehearse a scene.
2. a. He had six loaves of bread. b. He had two loaves of bread.
3. a. Are you open on Friday? b. Are you open daily?
4. a. What kinds of juice do you have? b. What kinds of pies do you have?

2 Listen and complete: (4 marks)



نص الاستماع فى آخر الكتاب

Mona : Hello. ① .... I speak to Hana, please?

Seham : Hello. She isn't in right now.

Mona : ② .... time will she be back?

Seham : I'm ③ .... .I don't know.

Mona : Please, tell her that I will ④ .... back tomorrow.

Seham : Okay. I'll tell her.

B. Reading (12 Marks)

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 marks)

1- I sometimes .... a nap after school.

a wear b put on c make d take

2- A " ...." is someone who bothers people.

a best b pest c nest d test

3- I .... chicken soup for dinner last night.

a has b have c had d don't have

4- You can borrow books from the school ....

a library b station c pavement d bridge

5- Does your mother ever .... on the phone?

a talks   b talking   c talk   d talked

6- He had a .... of lemonade. He was thirsty.

a slice   b can   c piece   d loaf

7- Ahmed .... a haircut twice a month.

a getting   b don't get   c get   d gets

8- They did the laundry by ....

a herself   b ourselves   c themselves   d himself

4 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one: (5 marks)

Answer

1	water	salad	lemonade	coffee	....
2	baker	doctor	teacher	cherry	....
3	cinema	park	Friday	museum	....
4	crazy	speech	old	cloudy	....
5	actor	always	usually	never	....

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: (3 marks)

I'm Malek. I'm from Ismailia, but I live in Cairo with my grandfather. I visit my family on Friday. My father is a doctor and my mother is a teacher. My school is next to my house. My teachers love me because I'm clever. Yesterday, I went to the zoo with my friends. We saw a lot of animals and birds. We had lunch there. It was really a nice day.

A- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1- Malek lives with his ....

a father   b grandfather   c uncle   d aunt

2- Malek goes to school ....

a on foot   b by car   c by bus   d by ferry

B- Answer the following questions:

3- What is Malek's father's job?

....

4- Where did Malek and his friends go yesterday?

....

C. Writing (10 Marks)

6 Write a paragraph of SEVEN (7) sentences: (7 marks)

"A visit to the museum"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: (2 marks)

1- a mouse - there - tree - that - Was - beside?

....

2- mood - in - I'm - the - pasta - for.

....

8 Punctuate the following: (1 mark)

1- Do you ever wear a wig, noha

....

2- i'll have a steak please.

....

Test 7 محافظة المنوفية

إدارة شبين الكوم التعليمية

A. Listening (8 Marks)

1 Listen and circle:

(4 marks)

نص الاستماع فى آخر الكتاب

1. a. I had two loaves of bread. b. I had three slices of beef.
2. a. I sometimes listen to music. b. I sometimes hear music.
3. a. Do you ever put on make-up? b. Do you ever sign autographs?
4. a. What was it? b. Where was it?

2 Listen and complete:

(4 marks)

نص الاستماع فى آخر الكتاب

Seif : Good morning.

Father : Good morning.

Seif : ❶ .... I speak to Ashraf, please?

Father : He is not ❷ .... right now.

Seif : What time will he be ❸ ....?

Father : I'm sorry, I don't ❹ ....

B. Reading (12 Marks)

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 marks)

1- My best .... is vanilla.

a flavour b kind c colour d size

2- I stayed .... on Friday as it was a holiday.

a park b office c work d home

3- I .... going to wash my hair tomorrow.

a do b is c am d are

4- I .... take the bus as I go on foot.

a was b don't c does d doesn't

5- Asmaa and Rofayda did the laundry by ....

a herself b yourselves c themselves d ourselves

6- I .... to school.

a walk usually b usually walk c usually walks d walks usually

7- Mr. Gamal drives a .... car.

a sport b sporty c sporting d sports

8- Does he usually .... a nap at noon?

a give b take c make d do

4 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one: (5 marks)

Answer

1	yellow	green	black	cherry	....
2	hotel	library	put	station	....
3	never	today	sometimes	always	....
4	slice	piece	kilo	behind	....
5	summer	May	winter	spring	....

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: (3 marks)

Last weekend, Ali went to the amusement park. He had orange juice. He went on a ride. He saw a dolphin show. He ate cookies. He took some pictures. He was very happy. His family was with him to keep an eye on him. His father does his best to make him happy. His mother also wants him to be happy. He wants to be a doctor when he grows up.

A- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1- Ali was ....

a sad b happy c tired d ill

2- Ali drank .... juice.

a apple b lemon c orange d pie

B- Answer the following questions:

3- Where did Ali go at the weekend?

....

4- What did Ali see?

....

C. Writing (10 Marks)

6 Write a paragraph of SEVEN (7) sentences: (7 marks)

"A visit to the zoo"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: (2 marks)

1- any - Do - cherry - have - you - pies?

....

2- Yes, - listens - music - to - always - he.

....

8 Punctuate the following: (1 mark)

1- There's an italian restaurant near the school

....

2- Do you think it s going to rain on monday?

....





Test 8 محافظة الدقهلية

إدارة طلخا التعليمية

A. Listening (8 Marks)

1 Listen and circle: (4 marks)

نص الاستماع فى آخر الكتاب

1. a. Once a week. b. Once a year.
2. a. Yes, it's cloudy. b. No, it's hot.
3. a. What's your favourite subject? b. What's your address?
4. a. How old are you? b. How are you?

2 Listen and complete: (4 marks)

نص الاستماع فى آخر الكتاب

Ali : ① .... do you live?
Islam : I live in Mansaura.
Ali : ② .... do you live with?
Islam : I live with my ③ ....
Ali : Do you study at school?
Islam : No, I ④ .... I work in a school.
Ali : Do you enjoy teaching?
Islam : Yes, I do.

B. Reading (12 Marks)

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 marks)

1- I'm going to .... two glasses of orange juice.
a has b be c do d have

2- ....do you iron your T-shirt?
a Who b What c How often d Which

3- Your brother .... you very much.
a colours b starts c reads d loves

4- They went to the zoo .... bus.
a in b on c at d by

5- Was .... a hotel near the school?

a their b there c her d three

6- We want to go to the.................... to read.

a bridge b cinema c library d museum

7- I'm .... a good time with my friends.

a has b have c heavy d having

8- No, she .... plays in the street.

a usually b always c hardly ever d ever

4 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one: (5 marks)

				Answer
1 he	she	my	we	....
2 orange	red	blue	pie	....
3 play	stay	run	ran	....
4 zoo	hotel	pest	school	....
5 usually	sometimes	often	yesterday	....

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: (3 marks)

A father told Reda to go to the bakery to buy some bread for breakfast. The father gave him some money. Reda walked to get the bread. When he arrived there, he found that he forgot the money. The son ran back home to get the money. He went again to the bakery and put the bread in a plastic bag. Now, it is 8:00 a.m. and Reda is late for his school. He was very sad.

A- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1- Reda went to the bakery ....

a by bus b by car c on foot d by bike

2- The son went to the bakery in the ....

a evening b morning c afternoon d night

B- Answer the following questions:

3- What did the father give his son?

....

4- Why was Reda sad?

....

C. Writing (10 Marks)

6 **Write a paragraph of SEVEN (7) sentences:** **(7 marks)**

"Different activities we did yesterday"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

7 **Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:** **(2 marks)**

1- do - to - How - go - they - often - school?

....

2- , please - a - want - of - can - lemonade - I.

....

8 **Punctuate the following:** **(1 mark)**

1- Salwa doesn t like fish

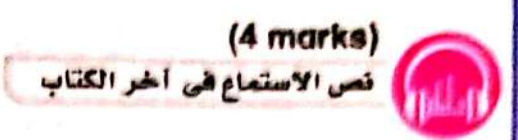
....

2- they played football on monday.

....

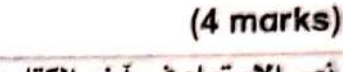
A. Listening (8 Marks)

1 Listen and circle: (4 marks)



1. a. An apple pie. b. Fried potatoes.
2. a. They are 120 pounds. b. They are 150 pounds.
3. a. How often do you catch fish? b. How often do you go fishing?
4. a. Where can you read books? b. Where can you borrow books?

2 Listen and complete: (4 marks)





Ahmed : Welcome to Egypt. Where are you from?

Tourist : I'm from ① ....

Ahmed : Do you ② .... Egypt?

Tourist : Yes, I do. The weather is ③ .... and the people are friendly.

Ahmed : Can you ④ .... Arabic?

Tourist : Just a little. It's difficult.

B. Reading (12 Marks)

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 marks)

1- .... invented the telephone?

a Who b What c How d Which

2- We go to school by ....

a myself b himself c ourselves d itself

3- My best .... is vanilla.

a kind b flavour c colour d size

4- Let's .... fruit by ourselves.

a slices b slice c slicing d sliced

5- She .... a wig every day.

a listens b wears c goes d talks

6- How.................... glasses of milk did she have?

a many b often c much d an

7- She .... a newspaper once a month.

a is read b read c reading d reads

8- I'm in the mood .... a slice of turkey.

a from b by c for d of

4 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one: (5 marks)

				Answer
1 station	dentist	nurse	doctor	....
2 summer	winter	rain	spring	....
3 herself	yourself	their	myself	....
4 ironed	bought	washed	chop	....
5 meatballs	steak	salad	juice	....

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: (3 marks)

Egypt is a great country. It's well-known (مشهورة بـ) for its fine weather. People in Egypt are very kind. Tourists come to Egypt from everywhere. They visit the Egyptian Museum in Cairo. They go to Giza to see the Pyramids. They visit Aswan to see the High Dam (السد العالى). In Alexandria, they visit Qaitbay Citadel and the Alexandria Library. I love Egypt very much. I'm proud of being an Egyptian.

A- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1- Tourists see the Pyramids in ....

a Aswan b Giza c Alexandria d Luxor

2- Egypt is a great ....

a city b town c country d village

B- Answer the following questions:

3- How is the weather in Egypt?

....

4- Why do tourists visit Aswan?

....

C. Writing (10 Marks)

6 Write a paragraph of SEVEN (7) sentences: (7 marks)

"A visit to Alexandria"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: (2 marks)

1- an - yesterday - had - He - accident.

....

2- he - What - will - time - back - be?

....

8 Punctuate the following: (1 mark)

1- Ali played chess but mona couldn't play

....

2- how did asmaa go to Aswan?

....





Test 10 محافظة الاسكندرية

إدارة الجمرك التعليمية

A. Listening (8 Marks)

1 Listen and circle: (4 marks)



نص الاستماع فى آخر الكتاب

1. a. At school. b. At the bank.
2. a. To take the train. b. To take the bus.
3. a. How many sisters do you have? b. How many brothers do you have?
4. a. Who invented the first ice cream cone? b. Who invented the first telephone?

2 Listen and complete: (4 marks)



نص الاستماع فى آخر الكتاب

Mr. Hisham : Is this the Egyptian ❶ ....?

The receptionist: Yes, it ❷ ....

Mr. Hisham : ❸ .... are you open?

The receptionist: We are open daily.

Mr. Hisham : Thank you for your help.

The receptionist: You are ❹ ....

B. Reading (12 Marks)

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 marks)

1- .... do you iron your shirt?

a Who b What c How d Which

2- We go to school by ....

a myself b himself c yourselves d ourselves

3- .... I help you?

a Are b Am c Have d May

4- The car is .... It costs a lot of money.

a high b expensive c cheap d bad

5- Where .... Bill go yesterday?

a do b did c does d is

6- My sister doesn't .... on make-up.

a wear b take c put d drive

7- Does your sister wear a .... ?

a cart b wig c nap d slice

8- He went to the .... to have a haircut.

a post office b barber's c hotel d school

4 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one: (5 marks)

					Answer
1	May	April	June	Sunday	....
2	maths	Arabic	English	iron	....
3	hot	start	warm	cold	....
4	plane	bus	three	bike	....
5	soup	bread	meat	pie	....

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: (3 marks)

Last summer, I went to Alexandria with my parents and my brother. We went there by train. We stayed at a big hotel for eight weeks. In the morning, we went to the beach where we swam and played with the sand. In the afternoon, we had lunch in nice restaurants. We visited Alexandria Library and Qaitbay Citadel. We also went to cinemas and theatres. We had a lot of fun. I will never forget this holiday.

A- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1- They spent about .... months in Alexandria.

a eight b two c three d four

2- The writer's family are .... people.

a four b five c three d six

B- Answer the following questions:

3- What activities did they do on the beach?

....

4- What places did they go to in Alexandria?

....

C. Writing (10 Marks)

6 Write an email of SEVEN (7) sentences: (7 marks)

Write an e-mail to your friend Soha telling her about "the history of ice cream". Your name is Hala and your email is hala@school.com. Your friend's email is soha@school.com.

New Message

To .... Cc Bcc

From ....

Subject ....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: (2 marks)

1- often - you - How - read - newspaper - a - do?

....

2- English - us - have - with - Study - fun - and.

....

8 Punctuate the following: (1 mark)

1- Did you visit luxor last month

....

2- Ali can play football well but I can t

....

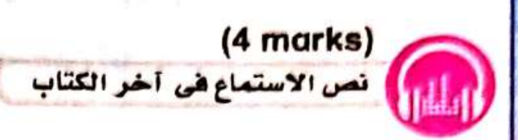


Test 11 محافظة بورسعيد

إدارة بورسعيد التعليمية

A. Listening (8 Marks)

1 Listen and circle: (4 marks)



1. a. We are open all the day. b. We are open from 8:00 to 4:00.
2. a. I'm sorry, I don't know. b. I'm sorry. I can't tell you.
3. a. Why did you run home? b. Why did you go to the supermarket?
4. a. Do you like fish? b. Do you like meat?

2 Listen and complete: (4 marks)



نص الاستماع فى آخر الكتاب

A : Good morning. Can I help you?

B : Yes, please. What ❶ .... of pies do you have today?

A : We have ❷ .... , peach and apple.

B : Do you have any ❸ .... pies?

A : Sorry. We're ❹ .... of them. But the apple pies are very nice.

B : OK, I'll take one.

B. Reading (12 Marks)

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 marks)

1- Are you open .... Fridays?

a at b on c in d with

2- It's two .... for Egyptians.

a children b Fridays c pounds d museums

3- How can I .... you with your homework?

a help b helping c helps d helped

4- At this restaurant, children under five eat ....

a tree b three c free d degree

5- I will chop some .... to cook the dinner.

a banks   b buses   c stations   d vegetables

6- We go to school by ....

a myself   b herself   c ourselves   d himself

7- I hardly ever .... a wig.

a put   b wear   c give   d get

8- She .... a newspaper once a month.

a read   b reading   c is read   d reads

4 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one: (5 marks)

Answer

1	need	cinema	read	see	....
2	lemonade	juice	milk	video	....
3	teacher	baker	sorry	farmer	....
4	on	to	in	phone	....
5	Monday	Friday	Sally	Tuesday	....

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: (3 marks)

Yaseen is my friend. He lives in Ismailia. He is in grade six in a primary school. His father works in a bank and his mother is a teacher. He visits his grandfather on Fridays. His teachers like him because he is clever and always helps his friends. He goes to school on his red bike. At school, he meets his friends. He wants to be a doctor when he grows up.

A- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1- Yaseen lives in ....

a Cairo   b Giza   c Ismailia   d Aswan

2- His father works in a ....

a farm   b bank   c school   d shop

B- Answer the following questions:

3- Who does Yassen visit on Fridays?

....

4- Why do his teachers like him?

....

C. Writing (10 Marks)

6 Write a paragraph of SEVEN (7) sentences: **(7 marks)**

"A good restaurant"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: **(2 marks)**

1- stayed - I - on - home - Sunday.

....

2- he - What - time - will - back - be?

....

8 Punctuate the following: **(1 mark)**

1- he isn't studying English and Arabic now

....

2- where did Gamal go at night, last friday?

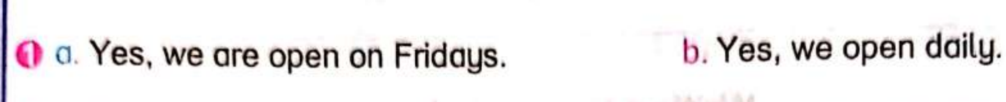
....





A. Listening (8 Marks)

1 Listen and circle: (4 marks)



1. a. Yes, we are open on Fridays. b. Yes, we open daily.
2. a. She visited a museum. b. She visited the zoo.
3. a. How about salad? b. What about fish?
4. a. Is it hot today? b. Is it cold today?

2 Listen and complete: (4 marks)



نص الاستماع فى آخر الكتاب

Hanan : Is it the Egyptian ❶ ....?
Jana : Yes, it is.
Hanan : Are you open ❷ ....?
Jana : Yes, we are.
Hanan : Thank you for your ❸ ....
Jana : You are ❹ ....

B. Reading (12 Marks)

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 marks)

1- I'm in the .... for spaghetti.
a moon b mood c road d food

2- Where is .... Grandpa?
a Alis' b Ali's c Alis d Ali is

3- I want two .... of roast beef.
a cups b cans c glasses d slices

4- I wash my hair by ....
a myself b herself c yourselves d ourselves

5- A: How .... do you have a snack? B: Once a day.

a many b much c old d often

6- .... she go to school yesterday?

a Was b Does c Did d Do

7- Dr. Eyad .... a sports car.

a drives b don't drive c driving d drive

8- Does she usually .... on make-up?

a put b take c make d do

4 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one: (5 marks)

				Answer
1 school	house	rain	library	....
2 ironed	washed	wanted	play	....
3 behind	blue	near	beside	....
4 March	July	family	June	....
5 juice	coffee	seat	lemonade	....

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: (3 marks)

Last summer, Hassan went to Alexandria with his family. His father drove their car. They went to the beach. He got a sunburn and played with the boys. His brother Omar made new friends. At night, they had dinner at an Italian restaurant. The food was delicious we had a nice time there.

A- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1- Hassan went to the beach with his ....

a friends b family c teachers d uncle

2- Hassan had dinner at a ....

a home b restaurant c beach d car

B- Answer the following questions:

3- Who drove the car?

....

4- What did Hassan do on the beach?

....

C. Writing (10 Marks)

6 Write a paragraph of SEVEN (7) sentences: (7 marks)

"The Egyptian Museum"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: (2 marks)

1- a park - library - There's - the - behind.

....

2- it - does - How much - for - cost - children?

....

8 Punctuate the following: (1 mark)

1- hana and nora have a piece of cake.

....

2- did he visit Luxor

....



Test 13 محافظة المنيا

إدارة ديرمواس التعليمية

A. Listening (8 Marks)

1 Listen and circle: (4 marks)



نص الاستماع فى آخر الكتاب

1. a. Yes, I watched TV yesterday. b. No, I didn't watch TV yesterday.
2. a. He is fine. b. He is ill.
3. a. How did they go to school? b. How did they go to the cinema?
4. a. How much water did she have? b. How much juice did she have?

2 Listen and complete: (4 marks)



نص الاستماع فى آخر الكتاب

Fatma : Good morning, Sarah.
Sarah : Good morning, Fatma.
Fatma : How ❶ .... your brother?
Sarah : He isn't ❷ .... , he has the flu.
Fatma : I'm sorry for him. Does he ❸ .... medicine?
Sarah : Yes, the ❹ .... says he has to stay in bed for a week.

B. Reading (12 Marks)

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 marks)

1- My favourite .... is vanilla.
 a kind b friend c flavour d colour

2- I will take a .... of apple pie.
 a cup b glass c piece d bottle

3- The actor .... autographs yesterday.
 a helped b talked c signed d called

4- He is going to .... his grandmother.
 a visit b visiting c visits d visited

5- I walked on the .... over the Nile.

a bridge b hotel c library d school

6- She never wears a .... because she has long hair.

a wig b make-up c T-shirt d sunglasses

7- She .... some groceries yesterday.

a buying b bought c buys d buy

8- I'm going to .... two glasses of orange juice.

a had b having c has d have

4 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one: (5 marks)

Answer

1 month	town	week	year	....
2 hot	warm	start	cold	....
3 behind	beside	in front of	school	....
4 baker	barber	order	waiter	....
5 What	April	When	Who	....

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: (3 marks)

Today is Friday. It's a holiday for all people except mum. She stays home and does a lot of activities. We help her. She does the laundry and irons shirts. She gives my father the grocery list. He goes to the supermarket to buy groceries. My sister chops vegetables and slices fruit. I feed the birds. In the evening, we watch TV and have dinner.

A- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1- They have dinner at ....

a restaurant b home c school d bank

2- They .... in the evening.

a iron shirts b watch TV c do laundry d slice fruits

B- Answer the following questions:

3- Why does dad go to the supermarket?

....

4- Who slices fruit?

....

C. Writing (10 Marks)

6) Write a paragraph of SEVEN (7) sentences: **(7 marks)**

"Your school"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

7) Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: **(2 marks)**

1- you - listen - Do - ever - music - to?

....

2- twice - I - pets - feed - a week - the.

....

8) Punctuate the following: **(1 mark)**

1- Magdy went to aswan by plane

....

2- What s for dinner

....



Test 14 محافظة سوهاج

إدارة سوهاج التعليمية

A. Listening (8 Marks)

1 Listen and circle: (4 marks)

نص الاستماع فى آخر الكتاب

1. a. We are open daily. b. We are open from 6 to 8.
2. a. They're eight pounds. b. They are five pounds.
3. a. What's for lunch? b. What's today's special?
4. a. How much are the apple pies? b. How much are the peach pies?

2 Listen and complete: (4 marks)

نص الاستماع فى آخر الكتاب

Mona : Good morning.

Mother : Good morning.

Mona : 1 .... I speak to Sara, please?

Mother : She's not 2 .... right now.

Mona : What time will she be 3 ....?

Mother : I'm sorry. I don't 4 ....

B. Reading (12 Marks)

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 marks)

1- Does your sister wear .... ?

a make-up b a wig c sign d a nap

2- How .... bottles of water did they have?

a old b often c much d many

3- She takes medicine .... a day.

a three b twice c one d never

4- It .... delicious.

a look b looks c looking d visited

5- In the park, children .... the birds.

a feed b feeding c loaf d visit

6- We go to school by ....

a myself b themselves c ourselves d itself

7- Are you ready ....?

a to order b asking c ask d order

8- .... are your hours?

a How b Where c What d Who

4 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one: (5 marks)

					Answer
1	April	July	Sunday	June	....
2	beef	turkey	meat	juice	....
3	one	two	boy	four	....
4	hot	cold	serious	took	....
5	bakery	film	bank	hotel	....

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: (3 marks)

Over 30 million people visit New York every year. It is a beautiful city. There are thousands of restaurants. There are also many shops. You can see many nice buildings there. Tours there are found everywhere. I was there two years ago. I saw many tall buildings there. I made many friends there. The people there are very friendly.

A- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1- There are many .... building in New York.

a ugly b bad c old d nice

2- You can buy there from ....

a shops b tours c homes d museums

B- Answer the following questions:

3- Why do people go to New York?

....

4- What did the writer make when he was there?

....

C. Writing (10 Marks)

6 Write a paragraph of SEVEN (7) sentences: (7 marks)

"The lunch you had at a restaurant"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: (2 marks)

1- stayed - I - on - home - Saturday.

....

2- an - there - Is - in - town - underground - your?

....

8 Punctuate the following: (1 mark)

1- where did you go yesterday, ali?

....

2- Hala doesn't go to school on friday

....

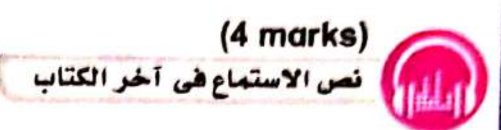


Test 15 محافظة قنا

إدارة ابو تشت التعليمية

A. Listening (8 Marks)

1 Listen and circle: (4 marks)



1. a. I have two sisters. b. I have four sisters.
2. a. It's two pounds for Egyptians. b. It's twenty pounds for foreigners.
3. a. Where is the bank? b. Where is the hospital?
4. a. How often does he feed the birds? b. How often does he read a newspaper?

2 Listen and complete: (4 marks)



نص الاستماع فى آخر الكتاب

Shopkeeper : Hello. How can I help you?

Heba : What are your ❶ .... ?

Shopkeeper : We are ❷ .... from 9 to7.

Heba : Are you open on ❸ .... ?

Shopkeeper : Yes, we are open ❹ ....

Heba : Thank you for your help.

B. Reading (12 Marks)

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 marks)

1- How .... fruit salad can you eat?

a many b much c tall d long

2- The library is in front .... the bank.

a on b at c in d of

3- We go to the cinema .... a month.

a one b second c twice d time

4- .... you think it's going to rain?

a Do b Does c Are d Is

5- She usually .... a sunburn.

a listens b gets c runs d signs



6- He .... a sports car.

a drove   b was   c wore   d heard

7- We can borrow money from the ....

a hotel   b school   c bank   d hospital

8- My best .... is vanilla.

a fruit   b colour   c flavour   d picture

4 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one: (5 marks)

Answer

1	museum	hospital	happy	school	....
2	eat	saw	went	ran	....
3	above	films	beside	under	....
4	always	often	usually	holiday	....
5	What	Where	May	When	....

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: (3 marks)

My name is Hesham. I'm in class six. My school is near my house. I go to school on foot. There is a library across from my school. I can read and borrow books from this library. I love my teachers very much. I do my homework at five o'clock. I have dinner with my family.I sleep early to get up early.

A- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1- Hesham is in class ....

a 4   b 5   c 3   d 6

2- There is a library .... the school.

a near   b across from   c beside   d behind

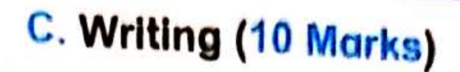
B- Answer the following questions:

3- How does Hesham go to school?

....

4- Does he sleep late?

....



C. Writing (10 Marks)

6 Write an email of SEVEN (7) sentences: (7 marks)

Write an email to your friend Amal to tell her about the ice cream and its history. Your name is Eman. Your email address is eman@student.com. Your friend's email address is amal@student.com.

New Message

To .... Cc Bcc

From ....

Subject ....

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: (2 marks)

1- did - he - How - much - have - water?

....

2- phone - on - is - talking - the - She.

....

8 Punctuate the following: (1 mark)

1- how is your family

....

2- you're welcome

....





Test 16 محافظة الأقصر

إدارة أرمنت التعليمية

A. Listening (8 Marks)

1 Listen and circle: (4 marks)



نص الاستماع فى آخر الكتاب

1. a. It's next to the post office. b. It's behind the post office.
2. a. Yes, we're open on Fridays. b. Yes, we're open daily.
3. a. What time will he be back? b. When will he be back?
4. a. Where can we buy books? b. Where can we read books?

2 Listen and complete: (4 marks)



نص الاستماع فى آخر الكتاب

Kareem : Is it the Egyptian Museum?
Woman : Yes, it ❶ ....
Kareem : ❷ .... are your hours?
Woman : We are open ❸ .... 8 to 7.
Kareem : How much does it ❹ .... to get in?
Woman : It's two pounds for Egyptians.

B. Reading (12 Marks)

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 marks)

1- I go to the .... to get a haircut.
 a) post office b) museum c) barber's d) bank

2- Where did the first ice cream factory .... ?
 a) open b) opens c) opened d) opening

3- I'll take a .... of apple pie.
 a) cup b) glass c) piece d) boitle

4- .... there a post office near the bank?
 a) Does b) Are c) Were d) Was

5- My mother sliced fruit by ....
 a) herself b) yourselves c) himself d) myself

6- She.............................. her grandfather last week.
 a) visits b) visited c) visit d) visiting

7- We're going to eat dinner at a ....
 a) school b) theatre c) bank d) restaurant

8- Do you ever .... an autograph?
 a) take b) paint c) sign d) put

4 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one: (5 marks)

					Answer
1	Were	Whose	Why	Who	....
2	under	steak	in	at	....
3	myself	yourself	ourselves	checkout	....
4	water	lemonade	juice	meatballs	....
5	chop	behind	beside	next to	....

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: (3 marks)

Big Mama's is a new Italian restaurant in downtown Cairo. It opened on Wednesday 5th. Who is Big Mama? Big Mama is the owner. She is the chef, too! On Friday, Tom and his friend Ramy ate dinner at Big Mama's. Tom said, "Big Mama's meatballs are the best in the town. Ramy said, "I'm going to bring my sister here tomorrow. Kids under five eat free!"

A- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1- Big Mama's is a ....

a library b bakery c restaurant d hotel

2- Big Mama's .... are the best in the town.

a meatballs b beefburger c roast turkey d chicken soup

B- Answer the following questions:

3- Where's the Big Mama's restaurant? ....

4- Who is the chef at Big Mama's? ....

C. Writing (10 Marks)

6 Write a paragraph of SEVEN (7) sentences: (7 marks)

"A boy who is a pest"

....

....

....

....

....

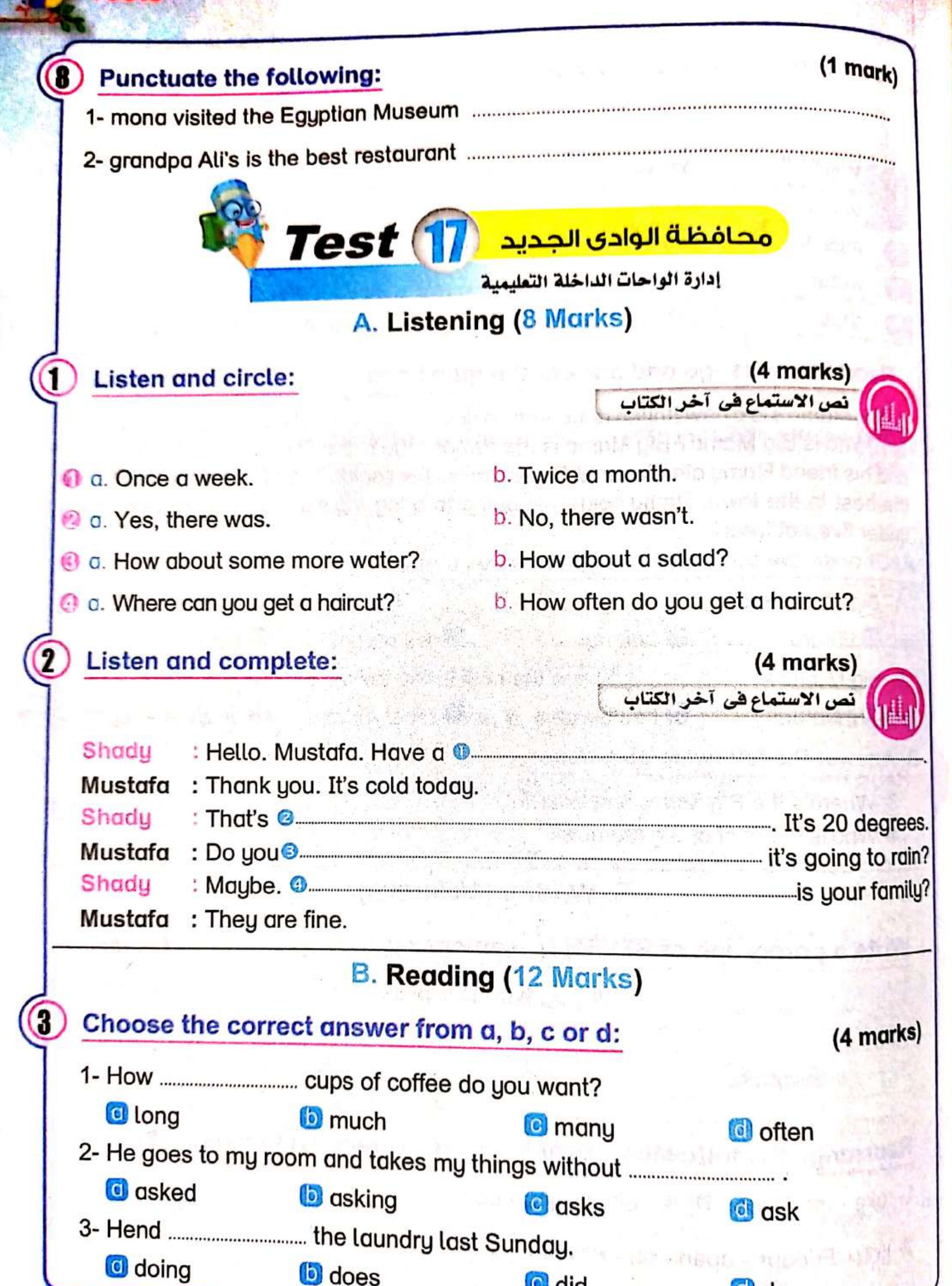
7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: (2 marks)

1- take - medicine - How - often - you - do?

....

2- you - Fridays - open - on - Are?

....



8 **Punctuate the following:** (1 mark)

1- mona visited the Egyptian Museum ....

2- grandpa Ali's is the best restaurant ....

Test 17 محافظة الوادى الجديد

إدارة الواحات الداخلة التعليمية

A. Listening (8 Marks)

1 **Listen and circle:** (4 marks)

نص الاستماع فى آخر الكتاب

1. a. Once a week. b. Twice a month.
2. a. Yes, there was. b. No, there wasn't.
3. a. How about some more water? b. How about a salad?
4. a. Where can you get a haircut? b. How often do you get a haircut?

2 **Listen and complete:** (4 marks)

نص الاستماع فى آخر الكتاب

Shady : Hello. Mustafa. Have a ❶ ....

Mustafa : Thank you. It's cold today.

Shady : That's ❷ .... It's 20 degrees.

Mustafa : Do you ❸ .... it's going to rain?

Shady : Maybe. ❹ .... is your family?

Mustafa : They are fine.

B. Reading (12 Marks)

3 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:** (4 marks)

1- How .... cups of coffee do you want?

a long b much c many d often

2- He goes to my room and takes my things without ....

a asked b asking c asks d ask

3- Hend .... the laundry last Sunday.

a doing b does c did d do

4- She had three .... of bread.

a bottles   b pieces   c cans   d loaves

5- Where did the first ice cream factory .... ?

a open   b opened   c opening   d opens

6- We had dinner at a nice ....

a theatre   b library   c museum   d restaurant

7- I .... my English book, so my teacher was angry with me.

a remembered   b forgot   c wrote   d bought

8- In the park, children .... birds.

a feed   b take   c bake   d visit

4 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one: (5 marks)

Answer

1	desk	month	week	year	....
2	crazy	patient	forget	happy	....
3	myself	him	ourselves	themselves	....
4	made	buy	found	bought	....
5	today	never	sometimes	usually	....

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: (3 marks)

Asmaa is a good pupil, she goes to school every morning on time. She does her homework in the evening. Her teachers like her because she is always quiet in class and listens to them well. Her favourite school subjects are English and science. She likes playing games on computer. She eats healthy food. She doesn't like unhealthy food. She wants to be a doctor because she likes helping people.

A- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1- Asmaa doesn't like ....

a healthy food   b unhealthy food   c good food   d food

2- Asmaa often goes to school ....

a very early   b very late   c on time   d late

B- Answer the following questions:

3- Why do Asmaa's teachers like her?

....

4- What does Asmaa want to be?

....

C. Writing (10 Marks)

6 **Write an email of SEVEN (7) sentences:** **(7 marks)**

To your friend Maha to tell her about your visit to Alexandria. Your name is Noura and your email address is noura@yahoo.com and your friend's email address is maha@gmail.com.

New Message

To .... Cc Bcc

From ....

Subject ....

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

7 **Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:** **(2 marks)**

1- the - I'm - for - in - mood - spaghetti.

....

2- often - Ali - How - read - does - a newspaper?

....

8 **Punctuate the following:** **(1 mark)**

1- Do you like going to the egyptian Museum

....

2- Mona s family went to aswan last month.

....



Test 18 محافظة مطروح

إدارة مطروح التعليمية

A. Listening (8 Marks)

1 Listen and circle: (4 marks)



نص الاستماع فى آخر الكتاب

1. a. At school. b. At the bank.
2. a. To take the plane. b. To take the bus.
3. a. How does he go to school? b. How does he go to the zoo?
4. a. What is for lunch? b. What's today's special?

2 Listen and complete: (4 marks)



نص الاستماع فى آخر الكتاب

Huda : Is it the Egyptian Museum?
The receptionist : Yes, it ❶ ....
Huda : ❷ .... are your hours?
The receptionist : We are open from 9:00 to 7:00.
Huda : Are you open on ❸ .... ?
The receptionist : Yes, we're open ❹ ....

B. Reading (12 Marks)

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 marks)

1- We .... open daily.
a is b are c do d did

2- I'm ready ....
a order b ordering c to order d ordered

3- Does your sister wear a .... ?
a wig b cart c make-up d nap

4- Fatima is going to.............................. a friend.
a visiting b visit c visits d visited

5- My mother puts the soup in a ....
a bottle b can c loaf d bowl

6- I did the laundry by ....
a myself b himself c herself d itself

7- She doesn't .... on make-up.

a wear b put c drive d talk

8- How .... water did he drink?

a many b long c much d often

4 Circle the odd one and replace it with a correct one: (5 marks)

					Answer
1	summer	winter	haircut	spring	....
2	beef	salad	meat	juice	....
3	plane	bus	three	bike	....
4	chopped	washed	play	visited	....
5	school	red	studio	home	....

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: (3 marks)

My name is Yasser. I'm twelve years old. I was born is Siwa. I'm a pupil in primary six. I've one brother and one sister. My father is a doctor and my mother is a nurse. I like reading and swimming. I go to Matrouh in the summer.

A- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1- Yasser is a ....

a doctor b teacher c pupil d film star

2- Yasser goes to .... in the summer.

a Cairo b Matrouh c Alexandria d Luxor

B- Answer the following questions:

3- Where does Yasser's father work?

....

4- What does Yasser like doing?

....

C. Writing (10 Marks)

6 Write a paragraph of SEVEN (7) sentences: (7 marks)

"A visit to the Egyptian Museum"

....

....

....

7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: (2 marks)

1- time - What - he - will - be - back?

....

2- likes - the - going - Mona - to - zoo.

....

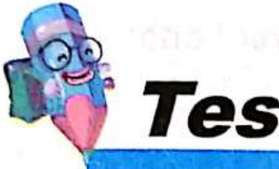
8 Punctuate the following: (1 mark)

1- is this hoda's pen?

....

2- we don't go to school on Fridays

....



Test 19

الأزهر الشريف

الإدارة المركزية لمنطقة المنوفية التعليمية

A. Reading

1 Read and choose the correct answer:

a. Can you do it by yourself?

1- No, I can't. 2- No, I don't.

b. Was there a shop near the library?

1- Yes, there was. 2- No, there isn't.

c. 1- What's your favourite food? 2- When do you have lunch?

- Meatballs and salad.

d. 1- Do you ever talk on the phone? 2- Do you ever use a computer?

- Yes, I sometimes send emails.

2 Read and complete the following dialogue:

Samar : Good morning. ❶ .... is your mother?

Nahla : Good morning. She is very ❷ ....

Samar : Did she see a ❸ ....?

Nahla : Yes, she did.

Samar : What did he give her?

Nahla : He ❹ .... her some medicine.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

1- Did you .... the birds?

a read b feed c bake d play

2- My sister has the flu. She .... medicine.

a takes b gives c goes d sends

3- How .... do you get a haircut?

a much b many c often d long

4- I sliced fruit by ....

a himself b myself c yourself d herself

4 Find the odd one and replace it with a correct one:

					Answer
1	teacher	dentist	baker	school	....
2	beside	above	meatballs	near	....
3	house	open	hospital	bank	....
4	do	what	why	how	....

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

My name is Omar. I follow my older brother Ibrahim all the time. I go into Ibrahim's room once a day and take his comic books. One day, Ibrahim invited his friend Kareem to play with him. When Ibrahim and Kareem went outside to play basketball, I went to Ibrahim's room and took a comic book. Ibrahim said, "You always bother me! You are a pest." I didn't know what a pest was. I found my mum and asked "What's a pest?" My mum said, "A pest bothers people." Then I asked, "Am I a pest?"

A- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1- Omar takes his brother's ....

a comic books b stories c films d shirts

2- Omar .... Ibrahim all the time.

a helps b follows c asks d talks

B- Answer the following questions:

3- How often does Omar take comic books from Ibrahim?

....

4- What did Ibrahim call Omar?

....

B. Writing

6) Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1- five - Children - under - free - eat.

....

2- I - Ahmed - to - May - speak - , please?

....

3- three - She - a - day - takes - medicine - times.

....

4- are - to - you - What - going - do - tomorrow?

....

7) Write a paragraph of not less than four lines about:

"A visit to the Egyptian Museum."

Guiding words:

went - the Egyptian Museum - my friends - by bus - saw - a lot of - ancient things - spent

....

....

....

....

....

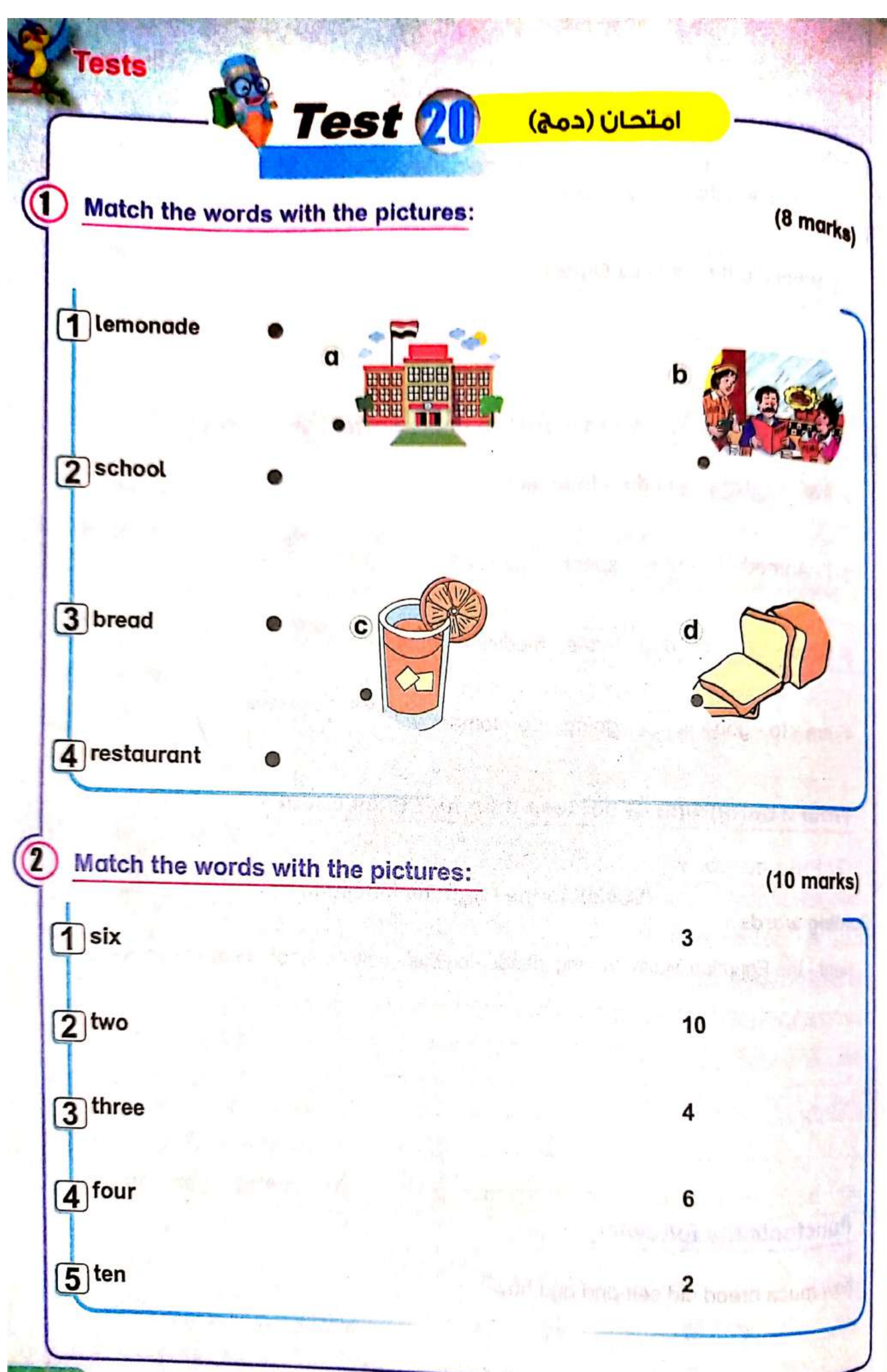
....

8) Punctuate the following:

how much bread did seif and aya have

....

Test 20 امتحان (دمج)



1 Match the words with the pictures: (8 marks)

1 lemonade

2 school

3 bread

4 restaurant

a

b

c

d

2 Match the words with the pictures: (10 marks)

1 six	3
2 two	10
3 three	4
4 four	6
5 ten	2



3 Look at the pictures and put (✓) or (×): (8 marks)

1- I have a bottle of water.		(..................)
2- I don't like fruit salad.		(..................)
3- He is feeding the birds.		(..................)
4- They're at a restaurant.		(..................)

4 Put the numbers in the correct order: (4 marks)

4	2	3	1
....	....	....	....

5 Supply the missing letters: (10 marks)

b .... nk | mo .... d | c .... p | ju .... ce | br .... dge





Listening materials

General Exercises

السؤال الأول

1- Listen and circle:

❶ What time will he be back?
- I'm sorry. I don't know.

❷ Why do you go to the train station?
- To take the train.

❸ How often do you go swimming?
- Twice a month.

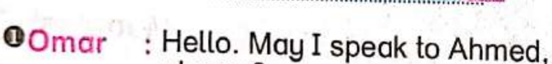
❹ Who invented the first ice cream?
- I don't know.

3- ❶ How's your family, Kamal?
- They're fine.

❷ Does he wear a wig?
-Yes, he does.

❸ Was there a bank near the theatre?
- Yes, there was.

❹ How much does it cost to get in?
- It's two pounds for Egyptians.



السؤال الثانى

❶ Omar : Hello. May I speak to Ahmed, please?
Ali : Hello. He is not in right now.
Omar : What time will he be back?
Ali : I'm sorry I don't know.
Omar : Can you take a message?
Ali : Sure.

❷ Samar : Good morning. How is your mother?
Nahla : Good morning. She is very sick.
Samar : Did she see a doctor?
Nahla : Yes, she did.
Samar : What did he say?
Nahla : He gave her some medicine.



Listening materials - Sample Test

Sample Test 1



1- Listen and circle:

1- Where is Sara?
- At school.

2- Why is Hany at the bus station?
- To take the bus.

3- How many sisters do you have?
- I have four sisters.

4- Who invented the first ice cream?
- Nancy Johnson.

2- Listen and complete:

Huda : Is it the Egyptian Museum?
The receptionist : Yes, it is.
Huda : When are you open?
The receptionist : We are open daily.
Huda : Thank you for help.
The receptionist :You are welcome.

Sample Test 2



1- Listen and circle:

1- What would you like to have?
- A cherry pie.

2- How many pounds are these?
- They are ten pounds.

3- How many cups do you have?
- I have four cups.

4- What do you eat?
- I eat a banana.

2- Listen and complete:

Maha : Good morning.
Mother : Good morning.
Maha : May I speak to Mona, please?
Mother : She is not in right now.
Maha : What time will she be back?
Mother : I'm sorry, I don't know.



Sample Test 3

1- Listen and circle:

1- What's the weather like today?
- It is cold.

2- How is Ali?
- He is ill.

3- Do you think it will rain?
- Maybe. It's cold today.

4- How often do you go swimming?
- Twice a week.

2- Listen and complete:

Asmaa : Good morning, Amira.
Amira : Good morning, Asmaa.
Asmaa : How is your sister now?
Amira : She is fine.
Asmaa : I think that she had the flu.
Amira : You are right.



Listening materials Tests

Test 4

1- Listen and circle:

1- Where were you yesterday?
- At school.

2- What are you going to do?
- I'm going to visit my uncle.

3- What do you want to eat?
- I want to eat meat.

4- What are your hours?
- We are open from 9 to 7.

2- Listen and complete:

Baker : Good morning. Can I help you?
Mona : Yes, please. What kinds of pies do you have today?
Baker : We have lemon, peach and apple.
Mona : How much are the apple pies?
Baker : They're ten pounds each.
Mona : Okay. I'll take one.

Test 5

1- Listen and circle:

1- Was there a bridge here?
- Yes, there was.

2- How much are the peach pies?
- They are five pounds each.

3- Who invented the sandwich?
- John Montagu.

4- Are you open on Fridays?
- We're open daily.

2- Listen and complete:

Salma : Hi, Noha.
Noha : Hello, Salma. Have a seat.
Salma : How is your sister?
Noha : She has the flu.
Salma : Did she see a doctor?
Noha : Yes, she saw a doctor. It isn't serious.

Test 6

1- Listen and circle:

1- What did she watch?
- She watched the actors rehearse a scene.

2- How many loaves of bread did he have?
- He had six loaves of bread.

3- Are you open on Friday?
- Yes, we are open daily.

4- What kinds of pies do you have?
- We have lemon, apple and cherry.

2- Listen and complete:

Mona : Hello. **May** I speak to Hana, please?

Seham: Hello. She isn't in right now.

Mona : **What** time will she be back?

Seham: I'm **sorry** .I don't know.

Mona : Please, tell her that I will **be** back tomorrow.

Seham: Okay. I'll tell her.



Test 7

1- Listen and circle:

1- What did you have?

- I had three slices of beef.

2- How often do you listen to music?

- I sometimes listen to music.

3- Do you ever sign autographs?

- No, I haver sign autographs.

4- Where was it?

- It was beside the bank.

2- Listen and complete:

Seif : Good morning.

Father : Good morning.

Seif : **May** I speak to Ashraf, please?

Father : He is not **in** right now.

Seif : What time will he be **back**?

Father : I'm sorry, I don't **know**.



Test 8

1- Listen and circle:

1- How often do you visit your uncle?

- Once a week.

2- Is it cloudy today?

- Yes, it's cloudy.

3- What's your favourite subject?

- My favourite subject is English.

4- How old are you?

- I am ten years old.

2- Listen and complete:

Ali : **Where** do you live?

Islam : I live in Mansaura.

Ali : **Who** do you live with?

Islam : I live with my **family**.

Ali : Do you study at school?

Islam : No, I **don't** I work in a school.

Ali : Do you enjoy teaching?

Islam : Yes, I do.



Test 9

1- Listen and circle:

1- What did you have?

- Fried potatoes.

2- How much are the T.shirts?

- They are 120 pounds.

3- How often do you go fishing?

- I go fishing once a week.

4- Where can you borrow books?

- I can borrow books from the library.

2- Listen and complete:

Ahmed : Welcome to Egypt. Where are you from?

Tourist : I'm from **America**.

Ahmed : Do you **like** Egypt?

Tourist : Yes, I do. The weather is **fine** and the people are friendly.

Ahmed : Can you **speak** Arabic?

Tourist : Just a little. It's difficult.



Test 10

1- Listen and circle:

1- Where were you yesterday?

- At the bank.

2- Why are going to the train station?

- To take the train.

3- How many brothers do you have?

- I have two brothers.

4- Who invented the first ice cream cone?

- A man in St. Louis.

2- Listen and complete:

Mr. Hisham : Is this the Egyptian Museum?

The receptionist : Yes, it is.

Mr. Hisham : When are you open?

The receptionist : We are open daily.

Mr. Hisham : Thank you for your help.

The receptionist : You are welcome.

Test 11

1- Listen and circle:

1- What are your hours?

- We are open from 8:00 to 4:00.

2- What time will she be back?

- I'm sorry. I can't tell you.

3- Why did you go to the supermarket?

- To buy some groceries.

4- Do you like fish?

- Yes, I do.

2- Listen and complete:

A : Good morning. Can I help you?

B : Yes, please. What kinds of pies do you have today?

A : We have lemon, peach and apple.

B : Do you have any cherry pies?

A : Sorry. We're out of them. But the apple pies are very nice.

B : OK, I'll take one.

Test 12

1- Listen and circle:

1- Are you open on Fridays?

- Yes, we are open on Fridays.

2- What did she do?

- She visited the zoo.

3- How about salad?

- Sounds good.

4- Is it cold today?

- Yes, it's cold today.

2- Listen and complete:

Hanan : Is it the Egyptian Museum?

Jana : Yes, it is.

Hanan : Are you open daily?

Jana : Yes, we are.

Hanan : Thank you for your help.

Jana : You are welcome.

Test 13

1- Listen and circle:

1- Did you watch TV yesterday?

- Yes, I watched TV yesterday.

2- How is your father?

- He is fine.

3- How did they go to school?

- They go to school by bus.

4- How much juice did she have?

- She had two glasses of juice.

2- Listen and complete:

Fatma : Good morning, Sarah.

Sarah : Good morning, Fatma.

Fatma : How is your brother?

Sarah : He isn't fine, he has the flu.

Fatma : I'm sorry for him. Does he have medicine?

Sarah : Yes, the doctor says he has to stay in bed for a week.

Test 14

1- Listen and circle:

1- What are your hours?

- We are open from 6 to 8.

2- How much are the pens?

- They are five pounds.

3- What's today's special?

- Spaghetti and meatballs.

4- How much are the apple pies?

- They are ten pounds each.

2- Listen and complete:

Mona : Good morning.

Mother : Good morning.

Mona : May I speak to Sara, please?

Mother : She's not **in** right now.
Mona : What time will she be **back**?
Mother : I'm sorry. I don't **know**?

Test 15

1- Listen and circle:

1- How many sisters do you have?
- I have four sisters.

2- How much does it cost to get in?
- It's two pounds for Egyptians.

3- Where is the hospital?
- It's across from the theatre.

4- How often does he read a newspaper?
- He reads a newspaper once a day.

2- Listen and complete:

Shopkeeper : Hello. How can I **help** you?
Heba : What are you **hours**?
Shopkeeper : We are **open** from 9 to 7.
Heba : Are you open on **Friday**?
Shopkeeper : Yes, we are open daily.



1- Listen and circle:

1- Where's the hotel?
- It's behind the post office.

2- Are you open on Sundays?
- Yes, we're open daily.

3- What time will he be back?
- I'm sorry. I don't know.

4- Where can we read books?
- At the library.

2- Listen and complete:

Kareem : Is it the Egyptian Museum?
Woman : Yes, it **is**.
Kareem : **What** are your hours?
Woman : We are open **from** 8 to 7.
Kareem : How much does it **cost** to get in?
Woman : It's two pounds for Egyptians.

Test 17

1- Listen and circle:

1- How often do you visit your grandfather?
- Twice a month.

2- Was there a bridge here?
- Yes, there was.

3- How about a salad?
- Sounds good.

4- Where can you get a haircut?
- At the barber's.

2- Listen and complete:

Shady : Hello. Mustafa. Have a **seat**.
Mustafa : Thank you. It's cold today.
Shady : That's **right**. It's 20 degrees.
Mustafa : Do you **think** it's going to rain?
Shady : Maybe. **How** is your family?
Mustafa : They are fine.

Test 18

1- Listen and circle:

1- Where can you borrow money?
- At the bank.

2- Why are you waiting here?
- To take the bus.

3- How does he go to school?
- He goes to school by bus.

4- What's today's special?
- Spaghetti and meatballs.

2- Listen and complete:

Huda : Is it the Egyptian Museum?
The receptionist : Yes, it **is**.
Huda : **What** are your hours?
The receptionist : We are open from 9:00 to 7:00.
Huda : Are you open on **Friday**?
The receptionist : Yes, we're open **daily**.

Dictation

تسميع الكلمات





Unit 1

١- مَدرسة ....

٢- الثلاثاء ....

٣- يشمل ....

٤- مفتوح ....

٥- مجانى ....

٦- شكراً ....

٧- مكتب البريد ....

٨- بنك ....

٩- فندق ....

١٠- محل الحلاق ....

١١- مخلل ....

١٢- بالغ ....

١٣- مصنع ....

١٤- بجانب ....

١٥- طماطم ....

١٦- عرض مسرحى ....

١٧- مكتبة ....

١٨- نكهات ....

١٩- أجانب ....

٢٠- محطة القطار ....

٢١- أمام ....

٢٢- على الجانب الآخر ....

٢٣- الجمعة ....

٢٤- يدخل مكان ....

٢٥- مفضل ....

٢٦- مسرح ....

٢٧- كوبرى ....

٢٨- اعلى / فوق ....

٢٩- يخترع ....

٣٠- شيكولاته ....

٣١- يوميًا ....

٣٢- ماعدا ....

٣٣- الاحد ....

٣٤- موظف استقبال ....

٣٥- أطفال ....

٣٦- طفل ....

٣٧- يتكلف ....

٣٨- خلف ....

٣٩- فانيليا ....

٤٠- آلة عمل الآيس كريم ....


أقل من ٢٠


من ٢٠ إلى ٣٠


من ٣٠ إلى ٤٠



40





١- وسط المدينة ....
٢- مجانى ....
٣- سلطة فواكه ....
٤- بيتزا ....
٥- أرز ....
٦- الأفضل ....
٧- بفتيك ....
٨- شوربة دجاج ....
٩- يقدم الطعام ....
١٠- شيف (رئيس الطهاه) ....
١١- فنجان من القهوة ....
١٢- عصير برتقال ....
١٣- بطاطس فى الفرن ....
١٤- كامل الطهى ....
١٥ - مكرونة ....
١٦ - مطعم ....
١٧- متوسط الطهى ....
١٨- فطيرة تفاح ....
١٩- ديك رومى مشوى ....
٢٠- عصير ليمون ....

٢١- خبز ....
٢٢- مالك ....
٢٣- سعر ....
٢٤- بطاطس مقلية ....
٢٥- ناقص الطهى ....
٢٦- جرسون ....
٢٧- جرسونة ....
٢٨- قائمة طعام ....
٢٩- يطلب / يأمر ....
٣٠- مياه ....
٣١- سلطانية من ....
٣٢- قطعة من ....
٣٣- شريحة من ....
٣٤- حقيقى ....
٣٥- هنا ....
٣٦- عنوان ....
٣٧- مطعم ايطالى ....
٣٨- كبير الحجم ....
٣٩- غدًا ....
٤٠- وجبة الغداء ....


أقل من ٢٠


من ٢٠ إلى ٣٠


من ٣٠ إلى ٤٠





Unit 3

١- أغسل شعرى ....
٢- يشترى سلع البقالة ....
٣- يبقى بالمنزل ....
٤- يغادر ....
٥- مخبز ....
٦- زبدة فول سودانى ....
٧- فطيرة كريز ....
٨- يركب اتوبيس ....
٩- بنفسى ....
١٠- يدفع ثمن شىء ....
١١- نفذ (لم يعد لديه)..............................
١٢- ملكى ....
١٣-نقود ....
١٤- محل ....
١٥ - ترولى ....
١٦ - يكوى قميص..............................
١٧-يقطع فاكهة ....
١٨-طبيب أسنان..............................
١٩- لا توجد مشكلة..............................
٢٠-سلة ....

٢١- يصل (إلى مكان) ....
٢٢- غالى الثمن..............................
٢٣-فطيرة..............................
٢٤- يقوم بغسل الملابس..............................
٢٥- سوبر ماركت..............................
٢٦- مكان الدفع فى سوبر ماركت..............................
٢٧-كريز..............................
٢٨- يقطع الخضراوات..............................
٢٩- ما نوع..............................
٣٠- طازج..............................
٣١- زبون..............................
٣٢- خوخ..............................
٣٣- عظيم..............................
٣٤- يمشى للمدرسة..............................
٣٥- قائمة مشتراوات..............................
٣٦- محل لبيع الكتب..............................
٣٧- ينسى..............................
٣٨- يصل..............................
٣٩- صف / طابور..............................
٤٠- يُعطى..............................


أقل من ٢٠

من ٢٠ إلى ٣٠

من ٣٠ إلى ٤٠



Unit 4

١- يكون صداقات ....
٢- نجم سينمائى ....
٣- يعمل بروفة ....
٤- قلعة قايتباى ....
٥- نادرًا ....
٦- لا أعرف ....
٧- احيانًا ....
٨- استديو للافلام ....
٩- ممثل ....
١٠- الليلة ....
١١- عادة ....
١٢- الآن ....
١٣- غدا ....
١٤- زبون ....
١٥- تضع ماكياج ....
١٦ - يأخذ غفوة ....
١٧- دائما ....
١٨- أبدا ....
١٩- يقود سيارة رياضية ....
٢٠- يتعرض لحادثة ....
٢١- يستمع للموسيقى ....
٢٢- يرتدى باروكة ....
٢٣- يعمل بروفة ....
٢٤- مكتبة ....
٢٥- يتحدث فى التليفون ....
٢٦- رسالة ....
٢٧- يتعرض لحادث ....
٢٨- شاطئ ....
٢٩- يعود ....
٣٠- كم الساعة ....
٣١- رقم ....
٣٢- يوقع أو تجرافات ....
٣٣- مغامرة ....
٣٤- لذلك ....
٣٥- مشهد (فى فيلم أو مسرحية) ....
٣٦- ملاهى مائية ....
٣٧- بعد الظهر ....
٣٨- ينتظر ....
٣٩- مطعم ....
٤٠- مكتبة الاسكندرية ....


أقل من ٢٠


من ٢٠ إلى ٣٠


من ٣٠ إلى ٤٠

40



Unit 5

١- عَذْل ....

٢- صغير فى السن ....

٣- ينسى ....

٤- اعتن بنفسك ....

٥- يقابل صديق ....

٦- درجة الحرارة ....

٧- متحف ....

٨- يقص شعره ....

٩- تفضل بالجلوس ....

١٠- مترو الانفاق ....

١١- مجنون ....

١٢- بدون ....

١٣- يذهب للمنزل ....

١٤- يتبع ....

١٥- صبور ....

١٦ - خطير ....

١٧- يخبز (خبز) ....

١٨- يلقى خطبة ....

١٩- مرتان ....

٢٠- يقرأ جريدة ....

٢١- انتباه / اهتمام ....

٢٢- شخص مزعج ....

٢٣- يطعم الطيور ....

٢٤- البرد ....

٢٥- مرة واحدة ....

٢٦- يضايق / يزعج ....

٢٧- سحابة ....

٢٨- يأخذ الدواء ....

٢٩- مقعد ....

٣٠- الطقس ....

٣١- أفضل ....

٣٢- ربما ....

٣٣- متأخر ....

٣٤- انفلونزا ....

٣٥- مطر ....

٣٦- مقهى ....

٣٧- بخير ....

٣٨- طوال الوقت ....

٣٩- مشكلة ....

٤٠- يقضى وقتا ....


أقل من ٢٠


من ٢٠ إلى ٣٠


من ٣٠ إلى ٤٠

